
Chapter 1. Module 2: Biographic Information

Table of Contents

Objectives	2
Tapes for BIO and associated modules	3
Unit 1 Target List	4
Unit 2 Target List	6
Unit 3 Target List	8
Unit 4 Target List	10
Unit 5 Target List	12
Unit 6 Target List	14
Unit 7 Target List	16
Unit 8 Target List	18
Unit 1	20
Introduction	20
References	21
Drills	31
Unit 2	50
Introduction	50
References	51
Drills	64
Unit 3	95
Introduction	95
References	96
Drills	108
Unit 4	142
Introduction	142
References	143
Drills	154
Unit 5	193
Introduction	193
References	194
Drills	206
Unit 6	232
Introduction	232
References	233
Drills	246
Unit 7	282
Introduction	282
References	283
Drills	293
Unit 8	330
Introduction	330
References	331
Drills	344

The Biographic Information Module provides you with linguistic and cultural skills needed for a simple conversation typical of a first-meeting situation in China. These skills include those needed at the beginning of a conversation (greetings, introductions, and forms of address), in the middle of a conversation (understanding and answering questions about yourself and your immediate family), and at the end of a conversation (leave-taking).

Before starting this module, you must take and pass the ORN Criterion Test. The resource modules Pronunciation and Romanization and Numbers (tapes 1-4) are also prerequisites to the BIO Module.

The Criterion Test will focus largely on this module, but material from Module 1 and associated resource modules may also be included.

Objectives

Upon successful completion of the module, the student should be able to:

1. Pronounce correctly any word from the Target Lists of ORN or BIO, properly distinguishing sounds and tones, using the proper stress and neutral tones, and making the necessary tone changes.
2. Pronounce correctly any sentence from the BIO Target Lists, with proper pauses and intonation, that is, without obscuring the tones with English intonation.
3. Use polite formulas in asking and answering questions about identity (name), health, age, and other basic information.
4. Reply to questions with the Chinese equivalents of “yes” and “no”
5. Ask and answer questions about families, including who the members are, how old they are, and where they are.
6. Ask and answer questions about a stay in China, including the date of arrival, location-purpose-duration of stay, previous visits, traveling companions, and date of departure.
7. Ask and answer questions about work or study, identification of occupation, the location, and the duration.
8. Give the English equivalent for any Chinese sentence in the BIO Target Lists.
9. Be able to say any Chinese sentence in the BIO Target Lists when cued with its English equivalent.
10. Take part in a short Chinese conversation, using expressions included in the BIO Target List sentences.

Tapes for BIO and associated modules

Biographic information (BIO)

Unit 1:	1	C-1	1 P-1	1&2 D-1	1 C-2	1 P-2
Unit 2:	2	C-1	2 P-1		2 C-2	2 P-2
Unit 3:	3	C-1	3 P-1	3&4 D-1	3 C-2	3 P-2
Unit 4:	4	C-1	4 P-1		4 C-2	4 P-2
Unit 5:	5	C-1	5 P-1	5&6 D-1	5 C-2	5 P-2
Unit 6:	6	C-1	6 P-1		6 C-2	6 P-2
Unit 7:	7	C-1	7 P-1	7&8 D-1	7C-2	7 P-2
Unit 8:	8	C-1	8 P-1		8 C-2	8 P-2

Units 1-4 R-1

Units 5-8 R-1

Classroom Expressions (CE)

CE 2

Time and Dates (T&D)

T&D 1 T&D 2

Unit 1 Target List

1. Qǐngwèn, nǐ zhù zai nǎr?

请问，你住在哪儿？

May I ask, where are you staying?

Wǒ zhù zai Běijīng Fàndiàn.

我住在北京饭店。

I'm staying at the Běijīng Hotel.

2. Nǐ zhù zai nǎige fàndiàn?

你住在哪个饭店？

Which hotel are you staying at?

Wǒ zhù zai nèige fàndiàn.

我住在那个饭店。

I'm staying at that hotel.

3. Nǐ zhù zai zhèige fàndiàn ma?

你住在这个饭店吗？

Are you staying at this hotel?

Bù, wǒ bú zhù zai zhèige fàndiàn.

不，我不住在这个饭店。

No, I'm not staying at this hotel.

4. Nǐ zhù zai Míngzú Fàndiàn ma?

你住在民族饭店吗？

Are you staying at the Nationalities Hotel?

Bù, wǒ bú zhù zai Míngzú Fàndiàn.

不，我不住在民族饭店。

No, I'm not staying at the Nationalities Hotel.

5. Něiwèi shi Gāo tóngzhì?

哪位是高同志？

Which one is Comrade Gāo

Něiwèi shi Gāo tóngzhì.

那位是高同志。

That one is Comrade Gāo.

6. Zǎo. Nuòwǎkè nǚshì! Nín hǎo.

早。诺瓦克女士！您好。

Good morning. Ms. Nowak! How are you?

Wǒ hěn hǎo.

我很好。

I'm very well.

7. Qīnwèn, nǐ shì Měiguó nǎrde rén?

请问，你是美国哪儿个人。

Where are you from in America?

Wǒ shì Jiāzhōu Jiùjīnshān rén.

我是加州旧金山人。

I'm from San Francisco, California.

Unit 2 Target List

1. Nǐ péngyou jiā zài nǎlǐ?

你朋友家在哪里？

Where is your friend's house?

Tā jiā zài Dàlǐ Jiē.

他家在大理街。

His house is on Dàlǐ street.

2. Nǐ péngyou de dìzhǐ shì ...?

你朋友的地址是……？

What is your friend's address?

Tā de dìzhǐ shì Dàlǐ Jiē Sìshíèr hào.

他的地址是大理街四十二号。

His address is No. 42 Dàlǐ Street.

3. Nǐ shì Wèi shàoxiào ba?

你是魏少校把？

You are Major Weiss, aren't you?

Shìde.

是的。

Yes.

4. Nà shì Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn ba?

那是国宾大饭店吧？

That is Ambassador Hotel, isn't it?

Shìde, nà shì Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn.

是的，那是国宾大饭店。

Yes, that's the Ambassador Hotel.

Nǐ zhù zài nàlǐ ma?

你住在那里吗？

Are you staying there?

Bù, wǒ zhù zài zhèlǐ.

不，我住在这里。

No, I'm staying here.

5. Nǐ péngyou zài Táiběi gōngzuò ma?

你朋友在台北工作吗？

Does your friend work in Taipei?

Tā bú zài Táiběi gōngzuò; tā zài Táizhōng gōngzuò.

他不在台北工作。他在台中工作。

He doesn't work in Taipei; he works in Taichung.

6. Nǐ zài nǎlǐ gōngzuò?

你在哪里工作？

Where do you work?

Wǒ zài Wǔguānchù gōngzuò.

我在武官处工作。

I work at the defense attache's office.

Wǒ zài yínháng gōngzuò.

我在银行工作。

I work at a bank.

Unit 3 Target List

1. Nǐmen yǒu háizi ma?

你们有孩子吗？

Do you have any children?

Yǒu, wǒmen yǒu.

有，我们有。

Yes, we have.

2. Liú xiānsheng méiyǒu Měiguó péngyou.

刘先生没有美国朋友。

Mr. Liú doesn't have any American friends.

3. Nǐmen yǒu jǐge nánháizi, jǐge nǚháizi?

你们有几个男孩子，几个女孩子？

How many boys and how many girls do you have?

Wǒmen yǒu liǎnge nánháizi, yíge nǚháizi.

我们有两个男孩子，一个女孩子。

We have two boys and one girl.

4. Hú xiānsheng, Hú tàitai yǒu jǐge háizi?

胡先生，胡太太有几个孩子？

How many children do Mr. and Mrs. Hú have?

Tāmen yǒu liǎngge háizi.

他们有两个孩子。

They have two children.

Shi nánháizi, shi nǚháizi?

是男孩子，是女孩子？

Are they boys or girls?

Dōu shi nǚháizi.

都是女孩子。

Both of them are girls.

5. Nǐmen háizi dōu zài zhèlì ma?

你们孩子都在这里吗？

Are all your children here?

Bù. #Liǎngge zài zhèlǐ, yíge hái zài Měiguó.

不，两个在这里，一个还在美国。

No. Two are here, and one is still in America.

6. Nǐ jiāli yǒu shénme rén?

你家里有什么人？

What people are in your family?

Yǒu wǒ tàitai gēn sānge háizi.

有我太太跟三个孩子。

There's my wife and two children.

7. Nǐ jiāli yǒu shénme rén?

你家里有什么人？

What people are in your family?

Jiù yǒu wǒ fùqin, mǔqin.

就有我父亲，母亲。

Just my father and mother.

Unit 4 Target List

1. Tā míngtiān lái ma?

他明天来吗？

Is he coming tomorrow?

Tā yǐjīng lái le.

他已经来了。

He has already come.

2. Nǐ péngyou lái le ma?

你朋友来了吗？

Has your friend come?

Tā hái méi(you) lái.

她还没(有)来。

She hasn't come yet.

3. Tā shì shénme shíhòu dào de?

他是什么时候到的？

When did he arrive?

Tā shì zuótiān dào de.

他是昨天到的。

He arrived yesterday.

4. Nǐ shì yíge rén lái de ma?

你是一个人来的吗？

Did you come alone?

Bú shì, wǒ bú shì yíge rén lái de.

不是，我不是一个人来的。

No, I didn't come alone.

5. Nǐ nǎitiān zǒu?

你哪天走？

What day are you leaving?

Wǒ jīntian zǒu.

我今天走。

I'm leaving today.

Unit 5 Target List

1. Nǐ shì zài nǎr shēngde?

你是在哪儿生的？

Where were you born?

Wǒ shì zài Dézhōu shēngde.

我是在得州生的。

I was born in Texas.

2. Nǐmen xīngqījǐ zǒu?

你们星期几走？

What day of the week are you leaving?

Wǒmen Xīngqītiān zǒu.

我们星期天走。

We are leaving on Sunday.

3. Nǐ shì něinián shēngde?

你是哪年生的？

What year were you born?

Wǒ shì yī jiǔ sān jiǔ nián shēngde.

我是一九三九年生的。

I was born in 1939.

4. Nǐ shì jǐ yuè jǐ hào shēngde?

你是几月几号生的？

What is your month and day of birth?

Wǒ shì qī yuè sì hào shēngde.

我是七月四号生的。

I was born on July 4.

5. Nǐ duó dà le?

你多大了？

How old are you?

Wǒ sān shí wǔ le.

我三十五了。

I'm 35.

6. Níměnnánháizi dōu jǐsuì le?

你们男孩子都几岁了？

How old are your boys?

Yíge jiǔsuì le, yíge liùsuì le.

一个九岁了，一个六岁了。

One is nine and one is six.

Unit 6 Target List

1. Nǐ zhù duó jiǔ?

你住多久？

How long are you staying?

Wǒ zhù yìnián.

我住一年。

I'm staying one year.

2. Nǐ tàitai zài Xiānggǎng zhù duó jiǔ?

你太太在香港住多久？

How long is your wife staying in Hong Kong?

Wǒ xiǎng tā zhù liǎngtiān.

我想她住两天。

I think she is staying two days.

3. Nǐ xiǎng zài Táiwān zhù duó jiǔ?

你想在台湾住多久？

How long are you thinking of staying in Taiwan?

Wǒ xiǎng zhù liùge yuè.

我想住六个月。

I'm thinking of staying six months.

4. Nǐ lái le duó jiǔ le?

你来了多久了？

How long have you been here?

Wǒ lái le liǎngge xīnqī le.

我来了两个星期。

I have been here two weeks.

5. Nǐ tàitai zài Xiānggǎng zhù le duó jiǔ?

你太太在香港住了多久？

How long did your wife stay in Hong Kong?

Tā zhù le liǎngtiān.

她住了两天。

She stayed two days.

6. Lǐ tàitai méi lái.

李太太没来。

Mrs. Lǐ didn't come.

7. Nǐ cóngqián láiguó ma?

你从前来过吗？

Have you ever been here before?

Wǒ cóngqián méi láiguó. Wǒ tàitai láiguó.

我从前没来过。我太太来过。

I have never been here before. My wife has been here.

Unit 7 Target List

1. Nín zài nǎlǐ gōngzuò?

您在哪里工作？

Where do you work?

Wǒ zài Měiguó Guówùyuan gōngzuò.

我在美国国务院工作。

I work with the State Department.

2. Nǐ zài nǎlǐ gōngzuò?

您在哪里工作？

Where do you work?

Wǒ shì xuésheng.

我是学生。

I'm student.

3. Nǐ lái zuò shénme?

您来做什么？

What did you come here to do?

Wǒ lái niàn shū.

我来念书。

I came here to study.

4. Nǐ niàn shénme?

你念什么？

What are you studying?

Wǒ xué Zhōngwén.

我学中文。

I'm studying Chinese.

5. Nǐ zài dàxué niànguó lìshǐ ma?

你在大学念过历史吗？

Did you study history in college?

Niànguó.

念过。

Yes.

6. Nǐmen huì shuō Zhōngwén ma?

你们会说中文吗？

Can you speak Chinese?

Wǒ tàitai bú huì shuō, wǒ huì shuō yìdiǎn.

我太太不会说，我会说一点。

My wife can't speak it; I can speak it a little.

7. Nǐ de Zhōngguó huà hěn hǎo.

你的中国话很好。

Your Chinese is very good.

Náli, náli. Wǒ jiù huì shuō yìdiǎn.

哪里，哪里。我就说一点。

Not at all. I can speak only a little.

8. Nǐ shì zài nǎli xuéde Zhōngwén?

你是在哪里学的中文？

Where did you study Chinese?

Wó shì zài Huáshèngdùn xuéde.

我是在华盛顿学的。

I studied it in Washington.

Unit 8 Target List

1. Nǐ jīntiān hái yǒu kè ma?

你今天还有课吗？

Do you have any more classes today?

Méiyǒu kè le.

没有课了。

I don't have any more classes.

2. Nǐ cóngqián niàn Yīngwén niànle duó jiǔ?

你从前念英文念了多久？

How long did you study English?

Wǒ niàn Yīngwén niànle liùnián.

我念英文念了六年。

I studied English for six years.

3. Nǐ niàn Fàwén niànle duó jiǔ le?

你念法文念了多久了？

How long have you been studying French?

Wǒ niànle yìnián le.

我念了一年了。

I've been studying it for one year.

4. Qùnián wǒ hái bú huì xiě Zhōngguó zì.

去年我还不会写中国字。

Last year, I couldn't write Chinese characters.

Xiànzài wǒ huì xiě yìdiǎn le.

现在我会写一点了。

Now, I can write a little.

5. Nǐ fùqīn shì jūnrén ma?

你父亲是军人吗？

Is your father a military man?

Shì, tā shì hǎijūn jūnguān.

是，他是海军军官。

Yes, he's a naval officer.

6. Wǒ jīntiān bù lái le.

我今天不来了。

I'm not coming today.

Wǒ bìng le.

我病了。

I'm sick.

7. Jīntiān hǎo le méiyǒu?

今天好了没有？

Are you better today?

Jīntiān hǎo le.

今天好了。

Today, I'm better.

Unit 1

Introduction

Topics covered in this unit

1. Where people are staying (hotels),
2. Short answers.
3. The question word *něige*, “which.”

Material you will need

1. The C-1 and P-1 tapes, the Reference List and Reference Notes.
2. The C-2 and P-2 tapes, the Workbook.
3. The drill tape (1D-1).

References

Reference List

(in Běijīng)

1. A: Qǐngwèn, nǐ zhù zai nǎr?
请问，你朱在哪儿？
May I ask, where are you staying?
B: Wǒ zhù zai Běijīng Fàndiàn.
握住在北京饭店。
I'm staying at the Beijing Hotel.
2. A: Nǐ zhù zai Míngzú Fàndiàn ma?
你住在民族饭店吗？
Are you staying at the Nationalities Hotel?
B: Shì, wǒ zhù zai Míngzú Fàndiàn.
是，我住在民族饭店吗。
Yes, I'm staying at the Nationalities Hotel.
3. A: Nǐ zhù zai něige fàndiàn?
你住在哪个饭店？
Which hotel are you staying at?
B: Wǒ zhù zai Běijīng Fàndiàn.
我住在北京饭店。
I'm staying ate the Beijing Hotel.
4. A: Něiwèi shì Zhāng tóngzhì?
哪位是张同志？
Which one is Comrade Zhāng?
B: Tā shì Zhāng tóngzhì.
他是张同志。
She is Comrade Zhāng.
5. A: Něige rén shì Méi tóngzhì?
哪个人是梅同志？
Which person is Comrade Méi?
B: Nèige rén shì Méi tóngzhì.
那个人是梅同志。

That person is Comrade Méi.

6. A: Nǐwei shi Gāo tóngzhì?

哪位是高同志。

Which one is Comrade Gāo?

B: Nèiwèi shi Gāo tóngzhì.

那位是高同志。

That one is Comrade Gāo.

7.^a A: Nǐ zhù zai zheìge fàndiàn ma?

你住在这个饭店吗？

Are you staying at this hotel?

B: Bù, wǒ bú zhù zai zheìge fàndiàn.

不，我不住在这个饭店。

No, I'm staying at this hotel.

8. A: Jiāng tóngzhì! nín zǎo.

江同志！您早。

Comrade Jiāng! Good morning.

B: Zǎo. Nuòwǎkè nǚshì! nín hǎo.

早。诺瓦克女士！您好。

Good morning, Ms. Novak! How are you?

A: Wǒ hěn hǎo.

Tone sandhi

There is a one sandhi shift here for 2 3rd tones in a row to hén hǎo.

我很好

I'm very well.

9. A: Qǐngwèn, nǐ shi Měiguó nǎrde rén?

请问，你是美国哪儿人？

May I ask, where are you from in America?

B: Wǒ shi Jiāzhōu Jiùjīnshān rén.

我是加州旧金山人。

I'm from San Francisco, California.

^aThis exchange occurs on the C-1 tape only.

Vocabulary

fàndiàn	饭店	hotel
-ge	个	general counter
hěn	很	very
Jiùjīnshān	旧金山	San Francisco
Mínzú Fàndiàn	民族饭店	Nationalities Hotel
něi-	哪-?	which
něige?	哪个?	which?
nèige	那个	that
něiwei	哪位?	which one (person)?
nèiwèi	那位	that one (person)
nǚshì	女士	polite title for a married or unmarried woman) Ms.; Lady
shì	是	yes, that's so.
-wèi	位	polite counter for people
zǎo	早	good morning
zhèi-	这-	this
zhèige	这个	this
zhèiwèi	这位	this one (person)
zhù	住	to stay, to live

Reference Notes

Notes on № 1

1. A: Qǐngwèn, nǐ zhù zai nǎr?
 请问，你朱在哪儿？
 May I ask, where are you staying?
- B: Wǒ zhù zai Běijīng Fàndiàn.
 我住在北京饭店。
 I'm staying at the Běijīng Hotel.

The verb **zhù**, “to live,” or “to reside,” may be used to mean “to stay at” (temporary residence) or “to live in” (permanent residence).

Zhù zài nǎr literally means “live at where.” The verb **zài**, “to be in/at/on,” is used here as a preposition “at.” It loses its tone in this position in a sentence. (The use of **zài** as a preposition is treated more fully in Unit 2.)

Fàndiàn has two meanings—“restaurant” and “hotel” (a relatively large hotel with modern facilities).¹ Literally, **fàndiàn** means “rice shop.”

¹Another word for “restaurant” is **fànguǎnzi**. The general word for “hotel” is **lǚguǎn**.

Notes on № 2

2. A: Nǐ zhù zai Mínzú Fàndiàn ma?
 你住在民族饭店吗?
 Are you staying at the Nationalities Hotel?
- B: Shì, wǒ zhù zai Mínzú Fàndiàn.
 是，我住在民族饭店。
 Yes, I'm staying at the Nationalities Hotel.

Shì: The usual way to give a short affirmative answer is to repeat the verb used in the question. Some verbs, however, may not be repeated as short answers. **Zhù** is one such verb. Others not to be used are **xìng**, “to be surnamed,” and **jiào**, “to be given-named.” Many speakers do not repeat the verb **zài** as a short answer. To give a short “yes” answer to questions containing these verbs, you use **shì**.

Notes on № 3-7

3. A: **Nǐ zhù zai nǎige fàndiàn?**
你住在哪个饭店？
Which hotel are you staying at?
B: **Wǒ zhù zai Běijīng Fàndiàn.**
我住在北京饭店。
I'm staying at the Beijing Hotel.
4. A: **Něiwèi shi Zhāng tóngzhì?**
哪位是张同志？
Which one is Comrade **Zhāng**?
B: **Tā shi Zhāng tóngzhì.**
他是张同志。
She is Comrade **Zhāng**.
5. A: **Něige rén shi Méi tóngzhì?**
哪个人是梅同志？
Which person is Comrade **Méi**?
B: **Nèige rén shi Méi tóngzhì.**
那个人是梅同志。
That person is Comrade **Méi**.
6. A: **Něiwei shi Gāo tóngzhì?**
哪位是高同志。
Which one is Comrade **Gāo**?
B: **Nèiwèi shi Gāo tóngzhì.**
那位是高同志。
That one is Comrade **Gāo**.
7. A: **Nǐ zhù zai zheige fàndiàn ma?**
你住在这个饭店吗？
Are you staying at this hotel?
B: **Bù, wǒ bú zhù zai zheige fàndiàn.**
不，我不住在这个饭店。
No, I'm staying at this hotel.

Něige is the question word “which.” In the compound **něiguó**, you found the bound word **něi-**, which was attached to the noun **guó**. In the phrase **něiguó rén**, “which person,” the bound word **něi-** is attached to the general counter **-ge**. (You will learn more about counters in Unit 3. For now, you may think of **-ge** as an ending which turns the bound word **něi-** into the full word **něige**.)

Něige rén/něiwèi: To be polite when referring to an adult, you say **něiwèi** or **něiwèi**, using the polite counter for people **-wèi** rather than the general counter **-ge**, though **-ge** is used in many informal situations.

Notice that the noun **rén** is not used directly after **-wèi**:

Něiwèi	Měiguó rén	shì shéi?
那位	美国人	是谁
Něiwèi		zhù zài Mínzú Fàndiàn.
哪位		住在民族饭店。

Compare the specifying words “which?” “that,” and “this” with the location words you learned in Unit 4 of ORN:

Specifying words		Location words	
něige? (nǎge?)	which?	nǎr?	where?
哪个		哪儿	
nèige (nàge)	that	nàr (nèr)	there
那个		那儿	
zhèige (zhège)	this	zhèr (zhàr)	here
这个		这儿	

Both question words are in the Low tone, while the other four words are in the Falling tone.

Many people pronounce the words for “which?” “that,” and “this” with the usual vowels for “where?” “there,” and “here”: **nǎge?** **nàge**, and **zhège**.

Bù: A short negative answer is usually formed by **bù** plus a repetition of the verb used in the question. When a verb, like **zhù (zài)**, cannot be repeated, **bù** is used as a short answer and is followed by a complete answer. Notice that when used by itself **bù** is in the Falling tone, but when followed by a Falling tone syllable **bù** is in the Rising tone.

Bù, tā xiànzai bú zài zher. No, he’s not here now.

Notes on № 8

8. A: **Jiāng tóngzhì! Nín zǎo.**
江同志！您早。
Comrade Jiang! Good morning.
- B: **Zǎo. Nuòwǎkè nǚshì! nín hǎo.**
早。诺瓦克女士！您好。
Good morning, Ms. Novak! How are you?

Name as greeting: A greeting may consist simply of a person's name: **Wáng tóngzhì!** "Comrade **Wáng!**" The name may also be used with a greeting phrase: **Wáng tóngzhì! Nín zǎo.** "Comrade **Wáng!** Good morning."—or, in reverse order, **Nín zǎo. Wáng tóngzhì!** "Good morning. Comrade **Wáng!**" The name is pronounced as an independent exclamation acknowledging that person's presence and status. It is not de-emphasized like "Comrade **Wáng,**" in the English sentence "Good morning, Comrade **Wáng.**"

Nín zǎo means "good morning"—literally, "you are early." You may also say either **nǐ zǎo** or simply **zǎo**.

Nǚshì, "Ms.," is a formal, respectful title for a married or unmarried woman. It is used after a woman's own surname, not her husband's. Traditionally, this title was used for older, educated, and accomplished women.

In the PRC, where people use **tóngzhì**, "Comrade," in general only foreign women are referred to and addressed as (so-and-so) **nǚshì**. On Taiwan, however, any woman may be called (so-and-so) **nǚshì** in a formal context, such as a speech or an invitation.

Nín hǎo: This greeting may be said either with or without a question marker, just as in English we say "How are you?" as a question or "How are you" as a simple greeting.

Nǐ hǎo ma? How are you?

Nǐ hǎo. How are you.

Also Just as in English, you may respond to the greeting by repeating it rather than giving an answer.

Lǐ tóngzhì! Nín hǎo. Comrade **Lǐ!** How are you.

Nín hǎo. Gāo tóngzhì! How are you. Comrade **Gāo!**

Literally, **hěn** means "very." The word often accompanies adjectival verbs (like **hǎo**, "to be good"), adding little to their meaning. (See also Module 3, Unit 3.)

How to identify yourself: You have now learned several ways to introduce yourself. One simple, direct way is to extend your hand and state your name in Chinese—for instance, **Mǎ Mínglǐ**. Here are some other ways:

Wǒ shì Mǎ Mínglǐ.	I'm Mǎ Mínglǐ .
我是马明理。	
Wǒ xìng Mǎ.	My surname is Mǎ .

我姓马。	
Wǒ xìng Mǎ, jiào Mǎ Mínglǐ.	My surname is Mǎ; I'm called Mǎ Mínglǐ.
我姓马，叫马明理。	
Wǒ de Zhōngguo míngzi jiào Mǎ Mínglǐ.	My Chinese name is Mǎ Mínglǐ.
我的中国名字叫马明理。	

Notes on № 9

9. A: Qǐngwèn, nǐ shì Měiguó nǎrde rén?
 请问，你是美国哪儿的人？
 May I ask, where are you from in America?
- B: Wǒ shì Jiāzhōu Jiùjīnshān rén.
 我是加州旧金山人。
 I'm from San Francisco, California.

Order of place names: Notice that Jiāzhōu Jiùjīnshān is literally “California, San Francisco.” In Chinese, the larger unit comes before the smaller. Similarly, in the question Nǐ shì Měiguó nǎrde rén? the name of the country comes before the question word nǎr, which is asking for a more detailed location. The larger unit is usually repeated in the answer:

Nǐ shì	Shāndōng	nǎr	-de	rén?
你是	山东	哪儿	的	人
Wǒ shì	Shāndōng	Qīngdǎo		rén.
我是	山东	青岛		人

Literally, Jiùjīnshān means “Old Gold Mountain.” The Chinese gave this name to San Francisco during the Gold Rush days.

Drills

Response drill

Give affirmative response to all questions.

1. Tā zhù zai nǎr?
他/她住在哪儿?
Where is he/she staying?

Cue Běijīng Fàndiàn
北京饭店
the Běijīng Hotel

Tā zhù zai Běijīng Fàndiàn.
他/她住在北京饭店。
He/she is staying at the Běijīng Hotel.

2. Nǐ àiren zhù zai nǎr?
你爱人住在哪儿?
Where is your spouse staying?

Cue Mínnú Fàndiàn
民族饭店
the Nationalities Hotel

Tā zhù zai Mínnú Fàndiàn.
他/她住在民族饭店。
He/she is staying at the Nationalities Hotel.

3. Lǐ tóngzhì zhù zai nǎr?
李同志住在哪儿?
Where is comrade Lǐ staying?

Cue zhèige fàndiàn
这个饭店
this hotel

Tā zhù zai zhèige fàndiàn.
他/她住在这个饭店。

He/she is staying at this hotel.

4. Fāng tóngzhì zhù zai nǎr?

方同志住在哪儿？

Where is comrade Fāng staying?

Cue

nèige fàndiàn

那个饭店

that hotel

Tā zhù zai nèige fàndiàn.

他/她住在那个饭店。

He/she is staying at that hotel.

5. Chén tóngzhì zhù zai nǎr?

陈同志住在哪儿？

Where is comrade Chén staying?

Cue

Běijīng Fàndiàn

北京饭店

the Běijīng Hotel

Tā zhù zai Běijīng Fàndiàn.

他/她住在北京饭店。

He/she is staying at the Běijīng Hotel.

6. Lín tóngzhì zhù zai nǎr?

林同志住在哪儿？

Where is comrade Lín staying?

Cue

Mínzú Fàndiàn

民族饭店

the Nationalities Hotel

Tā zhù zai Mínzú Fàndiàn.

他/她住在民族饭店。

He/she is staying at the Nationalities Hotel.

7. Huáng tóngzhì zhù zai nǎr?

黄同志住在哪儿？

Where is comrade Huáng staying?

Cue

zhèige fàndiàn

这个饭店

this hotel

Tā zhù zai zhèige fàndiàn.

他/她住在这个饭店。

He/she is staying at this hotel.

Response drill

Give affirmative response to all questions.

1. Gāo nǚshì zhù zai Mínzú Fàndiàn ma?

高女士住在民族饭店吗？

Is Ms. Gāo staying at the Nationalities Hotel?

Shì, tā zhù zai Mínzú Fàndiàn.

是，她住在民族饭店。

Yes, she is staying at the Nationalities Hotel.

2. Zhāng nǚshì zhù zai Běijīng Fàndiàn ma?

张女士住在北京饭店吗？

Is Ms. Zhāng staying at the Běijīng Hotel?

Shì, tā zhù zai Běijīng Fàndiàn.

是，她住在北京饭店。

Yes, she is staying at the Běijīng Hotel.

3. Jiāng nǚshì zhù zai zhèige fàndiàn ma?

江女士住在这个饭店吗？

Is Ms. Jiāng staying at this hotel?

Shì, tā zhù zai zhèige fàndiàn.

是，她住在这个饭店。

Yes, she is staying at this hotel.

4. Huáng nǚshì zhù zai nèige fàndiàn ma?

黄女士住在那个饭店吗？

Is Ms. Huáng staying at that hotel?

Shì, tā zhù zai nèige fàndiàn.

是，她住在那个饭店。

Yes, she is staying at that hotel.

5. Wáng nǚshì zhù zai Běijīng Fàndiàn ma?

王女士住在北京饭店吗？

Is Ms. Wáng staying at the Běijīng Hotel?

Shì, tā zhù zai Běijīng fàndiàn.

是，她住在北京饭店。

Yes, she is staying at the **Beijīng** Hotel.

6. **Lín nǚshì zhù zài Míngzú Fàndiàn ma?**

林女士住在民族饭店吗？

Is Ms. **Lín** staying at the Nationalities Hotel?

Shì, tā zhù zài Míngzú Fàndiàn,

是，她住在民族饭店。

Yes, she is staying at the Nationalities Hotel.

7. **Máo nǚshì zhù zài zhèige fàndiàn ma?**

毛女士住在这个饭店吗？

Is Ms. **Máo** staying at this hotel?

Shì, tā zhù zài zhèige fàndiàn.

是，她住在这个饭店。

Yes, she is staying at this hotel.

Response drill

Give negative response to all questions.

1. Jiāng xiānsheng zhù zai zhège fàndiàn ma?

江先生住在这个饭店吗？

Is Mr. Jiāng staying at this hotel?

Bú shì, tā bú zhù zai zhège fàndiàn.

不是，他不在这个饭店。

No, he is not staying at this hotel.

2. Mǎ xiānsheng zhù zai nàge fàndiàn ma?

马先生住在那个饭店吗？

Is Mr. Mǎ staying at that hotel?

Bú shì, tā bú zhù zai nàge fàndiàn.

不是，他不住在那个饭店。

No, he is not staying at that hotel.

3. Lǐ xiānsheng zhù zai Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn ma?

李先生住在国宾大饭店吗？

Is Mr. Lǐ staying at the Ambassador Hotel?

Bú shì, tā bú zhù zai Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn.

不是，他不住在国宾大饭店。

No, he is not staying at the Ambassador Hotel.

4. Zhào xiānsheng zhù zai Yuánshān Dàfàndiàn ma?

赵先生住在圆山大饭店吗？

Is Mr. Zhào staying at the Yuánshān hotel?

Bú shì, tā bú zhù zai Yuánshān Dàfàndiàn.

不是，他不住在圆山大饭店。

No, he is not staying at the Yuánshān hotel.

5. Liú xiānsheng zhù zai Yuánshān Dàfàndiàn ma?

刘先生住在圆山大饭店吗？

Is Mr. Liú staying at the Yuánshān hotel?

Bú shì, tā bú zhù zai Yuánshān Dàfàndiàn.

不是，他不住在圆山大饭店。

No, he is not staying at the Yuánshān hotel.

6. Táng xiānsheng zhù zài nàge fàndiàn ma?

唐先生住在那个饭店吗？

Is Mr. Táng staying at that hotel?

Bú shì, tā bú zhù zài nàge fàndiàn.

不是，他不住在那个饭店。

No, he is not staying at that hotel.

7. Sòng xiānsheng zhù zài zhège fàndiàn ma?

宋先生住在这个饭店吗？

Is Mr. Sòng staying at this hotel.

Bú shì, tā bú zhù zài zhège fàndiàn.

不是，他不住在这个饭店。

No, he is not staying at this hotel.

Response drill

Give either a negative or an affirmative response, according to the cues.

1. Táng tóngzhì zhù zai zhèige fàndiàn ma?

唐同志在在这个饭店吗？

Is Comrade Táng staying at this hotel?

Cue zhèige fàndiàn
这个饭店
this hotel

Shì, tā zhù zai zhèige fàndiàn.

是，他/她住在这个饭店。

Yes, he/she is staying at this hotel.

2. Mǎ tóngzhì zhù zai nèige fàndiàn ma?

马同志住在那个饭店吗？

Is Comrade Mǎ staying at that hotel?

Cue zhèige fàndiàn
这个饭店
this hotel

Bú shì, tā bú zhù zai nèige fàndiàn.

不是，他/她不住在那个饭店。

No, he/she is not staying at that hotel.

3. Lǐ tóngzhì zhù zai Běijīng Fàndiàn ma?

李同志住在北京饭店吗？

Is Comrade Lǐ staying at the Běijīng Hotel?

Cue Běijīng Fàndiàn
北京饭店
Běijīng Hotel

Shì, tā zhù zai Běijīng Fàndiàn.

是，他/她住在北京饭店。

Yes, he/she is staying at the Běijīng Hotel.

4. Zhào tóngzhì zhù zai Mínzú Fàndiàn ma?
赵同志住在民族饭店吗？
Is Comrade Zhào staying at the Nationalities Hotel?

Cue Běijīng Fàndiàn
北京饭店
Běijīng Hotel

Bú shì, tā bú zhù zai Mínzú Fàndiàn.
不是，他/她不住在民族饭店。
No, he/she is not staying at the Nationalities Hotel.

5. Liú tóngzhì zhù zai zhèige fàndiàn ma?
刘同志住在这个饭店吗？
Is Comrade Liú staying at this hotel?

Cue nèige fàndiàn
那个饭店
that hotel

Bú shì, tā bú zhù zai zhèige fàndiàn.
不是，他/她不住在这个饭店。
No, he/she is not staying at this hotel.

6. Jiāng tóngzhì zhù zai nèige fàndiàn ma?
江同志住在那个饭店？
Is Comrade Jiāng staying at that hotel?

Cue nèige fàndiàn
那个饭店
that hotel

Shì, tā zhù zai nèige fàndiàn.
是，他/她住在那个饭店。
Yes, he/she is staying at that hotel.

7. Zhāng tóngzhì zhù zai Běijīng Fàndiàn ma?
张同志住在北京饭店吗？
Is Comrade Zhāng staying at the Běijīng Hotel?

Cue

Mínzú Fàndiàn

民族饭店

Nationalities Hotel

Bú shì, tā bú zhù zài Běijīng Fàndiàn.

不是，他/她不住在北京饭店。

No, he/she is not staying at the Běijīng Hotel.

Transformation drill

Change the less polite forms **nèige rén** and **zhèige rén** to the more polite forms **nèiwèi** and **zhèiwèi**.

1. **Nèige rén shì Lǐ tóngzhì.**

那个人是李同志。

That person is Comrade **Lǐ**.

Nèiwèi shì Lǐ tóngzhì.

那位是李同志。

That one is Comrade **Lǐ**.

2. **Zhèige rén shì Fāng tóngzhì.**

这个人 是方同志。

This person is Comrade **Fāng**.

Zhèiwèi shì Fāng tóngzhì.

这位是方同志。

This one is Comrade **Fāng**.

3. **Nèige rén shì Jiāng tóngzhì.**

那个人是江同志。

That person is Comrade **Jiāng**.

Nèiwèi shì Jiāng tóngzhì.

那位是江同志。

That one is Comrade **Jiāng**.

4. **Zhèige rén shì Zhōu tóngzhì.**

这个人 是周同志。

This person is Comrade **Zhōu**.

Zhèiwèi shì Zhōu tóngzhì.

这位是周同志。

This one is Comrade **Zhōu**.

5. **Nèige rén shì Zhāng tóngzhì.**

那个人是张同志。

That person is Comrade **Zhāng**.

Nèiwèi shì Zhāng tóngzhì.

那位是张同志。

That one is Comrade Zhāng.

6. Zhèige rén shì Chén tóngzhì.

这个人 是陈同志。

This person is Comrade Chén.

Zhèiwèi shì Chén tóngzhì.

这位是陈同志。

This one is Comrade Chén.

7. Nèige rén shì Hú tóngzhì.

那个人是胡同。

That person is Comrade Hú.

Nèiwèi shì Hú tóngzhì.

那位是胡同志。

That one is Comrade Hú.

Response drill

Respond to **něige fàndiàn?** “Which hotel?” according to the cues.

1. **Tā zhù zai něige fàndiàn?**

他/她住在哪个饭店？

Which hotel is he/she staying at?

Cue

Mínzú Fàndiàn

民族饭店

the Nationalities Hotel

Tā zhù zai Mínzú Fàndiàn.

他/她住在民族饭店。

He/she is staying at the Nationalities Hotel.

2. **Zhāng tóngzhì zhù zai něige fàndiàn?**

张同志住在哪个饭店？

Which hotel is Comrade **Zhāng** staying at?

Cue

Běijīng Fàndiàn

北京饭店

the **Běijīng** Hotel

Tā zhù zai Běijīng Fàndiàn.

他/她住在北京饭店

He/she is staying at the **Běijīng** Hotel.

3. **Jiāng tóngzhì zhù zai něige fàndiàn?**

江同志住在哪个饭店？

Which hotel is Comrade **Jiāng** staying at?

Cue

nèige fàndiàn

哪个饭店

that hotel

Tā zhù zai nèige fàndiàn.

他/她住在那个饭店

He/she is staying at that hotel.

4. **Wáng tóngzhì zhù zai něige fàndiàn?**

王同志住在哪个饭店？

Which hotel is Comrade Wáng staying at?

Cue zhèige fàndiàn
这个饭店
this hotel

Tā zhù zai zhèige fàndiàn.

他/她住在这个饭店。

He/she is staying at this hotel.

5. Huáng tóngzhì zhù zai nǎige fàndiàn?

黄同志住在哪个饭店？

Which hotel is Comrade Huáng staying at?

Cue Mínzú Fàndiàn
民族饭店
the Nationalities Hotel

Tā zhù zai Mínzú Fàndiàn.

他/她住在民族饭店。

He/she is staying at the Nationalities Hotel.

6. Lín tóngzhì zhù zai nǎige fàndiàn?

林同志住在哪个饭店？

Which hotel is Comrade Lín staying at?

Cue Běijīng Fàndiàn
北京饭店
the Běijīng Hotel

Tā zhù zai Běijīng Fàndiàn.

他/她住在北京饭店

He/she is staying at the Běijīng Hotel.

7. Liú tóngzhì zhù zai nǎige fàndiàn?

刘同志住在哪个饭店？

Which hotel is Comrade Liú staying at?

Cue zhèige fàndiàn

这个饭店
this hotel

Tā zhù zài zhèige fàndiàn.

他/她住在这个饭店。

He/she is staying at this hotel.

Response drill

Respond to **něige rén** “which person ” with **nèige rén**, “That person.”

1. Qǐngwèn, něige rén shì Wáng Déxián?

请问，哪个人是王德贤？

May I ask, which person is Wáng Déxián?

Nèige rén shì Wáng Déxián.

那个人是王德贤。

That person is Wáng Déxián.

2. Qǐngwèn, něige rén shì Zhào Shìmín?

请问，哪个人是赵世民？

May I ask, which person is Zhào Shìmín?

Nèige rén shì Zhào Shìmín.

那个人是赵世民。

That person is Zhào Shìmín.

3. Qǐngwèn, něige rén shì Lín Bǎolán?

请问，哪个人是林宝兰？

May I ask, which person is Lín Bǎolán?

Nèige rén shì Lín Bǎolán.

那个人是林宝兰。

That person is Lín Bǎolán.

4. Qǐngwèn, něige rén shì Gāo Tíngfēng?

请问，哪个人是高廷峰？

May I ask, which person is Gāo Tíngfēng?

Nèige rén shì Gāo Tíngfēng.

那个人是高廷峰。

That person is Gāo Tíngfēng.

5. Qǐngwèn, něige rén shì Zhāng Wǎnrú?

请问，哪个人是张婉如？

May I ask, which person is Zhāng Wǎnrú?

Nèige rén shì Zhāng Wǎnrú.

那个人是张婉如。

That person is Zhāng Wǎnrú.

6. Qǐngwèn, nèige rén shì Hú Měilíng?

请问，哪个人是胡美玲？

May I ask, which person is Hú Měilíng?

Nèige rén shì Hú Měilíng.

那个人是胡美玲。

That person is Hú Měilíng.

7. Qǐngwèn, nèige rén shì Sòng Zhīyuǎn?

请问，哪个人是宋知远？

May I ask, which person is Sòng Zhīyuǎn?

Nèige rén shì Sòng Zhīyuǎn.

那个人是宋知远。

That person is Sòng Zhīyuǎn.

Transformation drill

Ask the appropriate “which” or “where” question according to the statements.

1. Tā lǎojiā zài Qīngdǎo.

他/她老家在青岛。

His/her family is from Qīngdǎo.

Tā lǎojiā zài nǎr?

他/她老家在哪儿？

Where is his/her family from?

2. Tā xiànzài zài Jiānádà.

他/她现在在加拿大。

He /she is in Canada now.

Tā xiànzài zài nǎr?

他/她现在在哪儿？

Where is he/she now?

3. Tā zhù zai Běijīng Fàndiàn.

他/她住在北京饭店。

He/she is staying at the Běijīng Hotel.

Tā zhù zai něige fàndiàn?

他/她住在哪个饭店？

In which hotel is he/she staying?

4. Tā xiànzài zài Shāndōng.

他/她现在在山东。

He /she is in Shāndōng now.

Tā xiànzài zài nǎr?

他/她现在在哪儿？

Where is he/she now?

5. Tā zhù zai Míngzú Fàndiàn.

他/她住在民族饭店。

He/she is staying at the Nationalities Hotel.

Tā zhù zài něige fàndiàn.

他/她住在哪个饭店？

In which hotel is he/she staying?

6. Tā lǎojiā zài Húběi.

他/她老家在湖北。

His/her family is from Húběi.

Tā lǎojiā zài nǎr?

他/她老家在那儿？

Where is his/her family from?

7. Tā xiànzài zài Měiguó.

他/她现在在美国。

He/she is in America now.

Tā xiànzài zài nǎr?

他/她现在在哪儿？

Where is he/she now?

8. Tā zhù zài zhèige fàndiàn.

他/她住在这个饭店。

He/she is staying at this hotel.

Tā zhù zài něige fàndiàn?

他/她住在哪个饭店？

In which hotel is he/she staying?

9. Tā lǎojiā zài Guǎngdōng.

他/她老家在广东。

His/her family is from Guǎngdōng.

Tā lǎojiā zài nǎr?

他/她老家在那儿？

Where is his/her family from?

Unit 2

Introduction

Topics covered in this unit

1. Where people are staying (houses).
2. Where people are working.
3. Addresses.
4. The marker *de*.
5. The marker *ba*.
6. The prepositional verb *zài*.

Material you will need

1. The C-1 and P-1 tapes, the Reference List and Reference Notes.
2. The C-2 and P-2 tapes, the Workbook.
3. The 2D-1 tape.

References

Reference List

1. A: **Nǐ zhù zài nǎlǐ?**
你住在哪理？
Where are you staying?
B: **Wǒ zhù zài Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn.**
我住在国宾大饭店。
I'm staying at the Ambassador Hotel.

2. A: **Nǐ zhù zài nǎlǐ?**
你住在哪理？
Where are you staying?
B: **Wǒ zhù zài zhèlǐ.**
我住在这理。
I'm staying here.
A: **Tā ne?**
他呢？
How about him?
B: **Tā zhù zài nàlǐ.**
他住在那理。
He is staying there.

3. A: **Nǐ zhù zài nǎlǐ?**
你住在哪理？
Where are you staying?
B: **Wǒ zhù zài péngyou jiā.**
我住在朋友家。
I'm staying at a friend's home.

4. A: **Nǐ péngyou jiā zài nǎlǐ?**
你朋友家在哪理？
Where is your friend's house?
B: **Tā jiā zài Dàlǐ Jiē.**
他家在大力街。
His house is on Dàlǐ Street.

5. A: **Nǐ péngyou de dìzhǐ shì ...?**

你朋友的地址是……？

What is your friend's address?

B: Tā de dìzhǐ shì Dàlǐ jiē Sìshìèrhào.

他的地址是大力街四十二号。

His address is № 42 Dàlǐ Street.

6.^a A: Nǐ shì Wèi shàoxiào ba?

你是魏少校吧？

You are Major Weiss, aren't you?

B: Shìde.

是的。

Yes.

7.^b A: Nà shì Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn ba?

那是国宾大饭店吧？

That is Ambassador Hotel, isn't it?

B: Shìde.

是的。

Yes.

8. A: Nǐ péngyou xiànzài zài nǎli gōngzuò?

你朋友现在在哪里工作？

Where does your friend work now?

B: Tā zài Táinán gōngzuò.

他在台南工作。

He works in Táinán.

9.^c A: Nǐ zài nǎli gōngzuò?

你在哪里工作？

Where do you work?

B: Wǒ zài Wǔguānchù gōngzuò.

我在武官处工作。

I work at the Defense Attache's Office.

10.^d A: Nǐ zài nǎli gōngzuò?

你在哪里工作？

Where do you work?

B: Wǒ zài yínháng gōngzuò.

我在银行工作。

I work at a bank.

- 11.^e A: Nǐ péngyou zài Táiběi gōngzuò ma?
你朋友在台北工作吗?
Does your friend work in Taipei?
- B: Tā bú zài Táiběi gōngzuò; tā zài Táizhōng gōngzuò.
他不在台北工作。他在台中工作。
He doesn't work in Taipei; he works in Taichung.

^aThis exchange occurs on the C-1 tape only

^bThis exchange occurs on the P-1 tape only

^cThis exchange occurs on the C-1 tape only

^dThis exchange occurs on the P-1 tape only

^eThis exchange occurs on the C-1 tape only

Vocabulary

ba	吧	question marker expressing supposition of what answer will be
dàfàndiàn	大饭店	hotel
-de	的	possessive marker
dìzhǐ	地址	address
gōngzuò	工作	to work
Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn	国宾大饭店	Ambassador Hotel
-hào	一号	number (in address)
jiā	家	home, house
jiē	街	street
lù	路	road
nà-	那一	that
nàge	那个	that (one)
náli	哪里	where
nàli	那里	there
péngyou	朋友	friend
shàoxiào	少校	major (military title)
Shìde	是的	Yes, that's so.
Wǔguānchù	武官处	defense attache office
yínháng	银行	bank
zài	在	to be in/at/on (prepositional verb)
zhè-	这	this
zhège	这个	this (one)
zhèli	这里	here
Dìyī Dàfàndiàn	第一大饭店	First Hotel
Měiguó Guójì Jiāoliú Zǒngshǔ	美国国际交流总署	U.S. International Communications Agency
Měiguó Yínháng	美国银行	Bank of America
Táiwān Yínháng	台湾银行	Bank of Taiwan
Yóuzhèngjú	邮政局	post office

Reference Notes

Notes on №1-2

1. A: **Nǐ zhù zài náli?**
你住在哪理？
Where are you staying?
- B: **Wǒ zhù zài Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn.**
我住在国宾大饭店。
I'm staying at the Ambassador Hotel.
2. A: **Nǐ zhù zài náli?**
你住在哪理？
Where are you staying?
- B: **Wǒ zhù zài zhèli.**
我住在这理。
I'm staying here.
- A: **Tā ne?**
他呢？
How about him?
- B: **Tā zhù zài nàli.**
他住在那理。
He is staying there.

The word **guóbīn** actually refers to any official state guest, not just an ambassador. (The word for “ambassador” is **dàshǐ**) The translation “Ambassador Hotel” has been used for years by that hotel and, although inaccurate, has been retained in this text.

Dàfàndiàn means “great hotel” or “grand hotel.” It is commonly used in the names of Taiwan and Hong Kong hotels.

Náli, **nàli**, and **zhèli** are common variants of **nǎr**, **nàr**, and **zhèr** in non-Peking dialects of Standard Chinese. The forms with r are Peking dialect forms.

Compare:

Peking	Other	
nǎr?	náli?	where?
哪儿	哪里	
nàr	nàli	there
那儿	那里	
zhèr	zhèli	here

Peking	Other	
这儿	这里	

Notice the difference in tone between **nǎ** and **náli**. This is because **-li** has a basic Low tone, and the first of two adjoining Low-tone syllables changes to a Rising tone: **nǎ** + **-lǐ** = **náli**.

Notes on №3-4

3. A: Nǐ zhù zài nǎlǐ?
你住在哪理?
Where are you staying?
B: Wǒ zhù zài péngyou jiā.
我住在朋友家。
I'm staying at a friend's home.
4. A: Nǐ péngyou jiā zài nǎlǐ?
你朋友家在哪理?
Where is your friend's house?
B: Tā jiā zài Dàlǐ Jiē.
他家在大力街。
His house is on Dàlǐ Street.

The possessive relationships in *péngyou jiā*, “friend’s house,” *nǐ péngyou jiā*, “your friend’s house,” and *tā jiā*, “his house,” are unmarked, while the English must include -’s or the possessive form of the pronoun (“your,” “his”). In Chinese, possessive relationships may be expressed by simply putting the possessor in front of the possessed when the relationship between the two is particularly close, like the relationship between a person and his home, family, or friends.

Notes on №5

5. A: **Nǐ péngyoude dìzhǐ shì ...?**
你朋友的地址是……？
What is your friend's address?
- B: **Tā de dìzhǐ shì jiē Sìshìèrhào.**
他的地址是大力街四十二号。
His address is № 42 Dàlǐ street.

Péngyou de dìzhǐ: "The marker **-de** in this phrase is just like the English possessive ending **'s**. With the exception of close relationships, this is the usual way to form the possessive in Chinese.

nǐ péngyǒu	-de	dìzhǐ
你朋友	的	地址
your friend	's	address

Unlike the English **'s** ending, **-de** is also added to pronouns.

wǒ de	my
我的	
nǐ de	your
你的	
tā de	his/her
他/她的	

You are learning possessive phrases in which the marker **-de** is used (**tā de dìzhǐ**) and some possessive phrases which do not contain **-de** (**nǐ péngyou jiā**). There are certain reasons for the inclusion or omission of **-de**. If a close relationship exists between the possessor and the possessed, the marker **-de** might not be used. If a phrase is long and complex, as **Lǐ xiānsheng péngyou de tàitai**, the marker **-de** is used to separate the possessor from the possessed.

short or simple		long or complex	
nǐ	jiā	Hú Měilíng	-de lǎojiā
你	家	胡美玲	的老家
wǒ	péngyou	nǐ péngyou	-de dìzhǐ
我	朋友	你朋友	的地址
		Lǐ xiānsheng péngyou	-de tàitai
		李先生朋友	的太太

But these are not hard and fast rules. The use or omission of **-de** is not determined solely by the number of syllables in a phrase or by the closeness between the possessor and the possessed, although both of these considerations do play a big part in the decision.

While some common nouns are usually used without **-de** before them, most nouns are more likely to be preceded by **-de**, and many even require it. **Dìzhǐ**, “address,” is the only noun you have learned which REQUIRES the possessive marker **-de** added to the possessor. But other nouns such as **jiā** are not always preceded by **-de**. This is also the case with nouns indicating personal relationships, like **fùmǔ**, “father,” and **tàitai** “wife.” **Péngyou**, “friend,” **xuésheng**, “student,” and **lǎoshī** “teacher” are commonly used without **-de**, but may also be used with the marker.

You might expect the question **Nǐ péngyou de dìzhǐ...?** to be completed with a word such as **shénme**, “what.” However, the incomplete form given in this exchange, with the voice trailing off, inviting completion, is also commonly used.

Addresses: The order in which addresses are given in Chinese is the reverse of that used in English. In Chinese, the order is from the general to the specific: country, province or state, city, street name, street number.

-hào: A street number is always given with the bound word **-hào**, “number,” after it.²

²The word **dì-** is sometimes translated “number,” as in **dìyī**, “number one” (See resource module on Numbers, tape 4.)

Notes on №6-7

6. A: **Nǐ shì Wèi shàoxiào ba?**
你是魏少校吧？
You are Major Weiss, aren't you?
- B: **Shìde.**
是的。
Yes.
7. A: **Nà shì Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn ba?**
那是国宾大饭店吧？
That is Ambassador Hotel, isn't it?
- B: **Shìde.**
是的。
Yes.

Ba is a marker for a question which expresses the speaker's supposition as to what the answer will be. It is the type of question which asks for a confirmation from the listener.

There are three ways to translate the two questions in exchanges 6 and 7 into English:

Nǐ shì Wèi shàoxiào ba?	Aren't you Major Weiss?
你是魏少校吧？	You are Major Weiss, aren't you? You must be Major Weiss.
Nà shì Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn ba?	Isn't that the Ambassador Hotel?
那是国宾大饭店吧？	That is the Ambassador Hotel, isn't it? That must be the Ambassador Hotel.

Each translation reflects a different degree of certainty on the part of the speaker. (While the differences in certainty are expressed in English by variation in wording, they can be expressed in Chinese by intonation.) You will probably find that the "isn't it", "aren't you" translation fits most situations.

The short answer **shìde** is an expanded form of the short answer **shì**, with the same meaning: "Yes, that's so." **Shìde** is also the word used for the "yes" in the military "Yes, sir."

Nà (nèi): In the subject position, **nà (nèi)**, "that," and **zhè (zhèi)**, "this," may be used either as free words or as bound words, with **-ge** following.

Compare:

Nà		shì Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn.
那		是国宾大饭店。

That		is the Ambassador Hotel.
Nà	-ge	shi Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn.
那	个	是国宾大饭店。
That	one	is the Ambassador Hotel.

However, the question form *nǎ-* (*něi-*) is a bound word.

Nǎge (fàndiàn) shì Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn?	Which one is the Ambassador Hotel?
那个 (饭店) 是国宾大饭店?	

Notes on №8-11

8. A: **Nǐ péngyou xiànzài zài nǎli gōngzuò?**
你朋友现在在哪里工作？
Where does your friend work now?
B: **Tā zài Tánán gōngzuò.**
他在台南工作。
He works in **Tánán**
9. A: **Nǐ zài nǎli gōngzuò?**
你在哪里工作？
Where do you work?
B: **Wǒ zài Wǔguānchù gōngzuò.**
我在武官处工作。
I work at the Defense Attache's Office.
10. A: **Nǐ zài nǎli gōngzuò?**
你在哪里工作？
Where do you work?
B: **Wǒ zài yínháng gōngzuò.**
我在银行工作。
I work at a bank.
11. A: **Nǐ péngyou zài Táiběi gōngzuò ma?**
你朋友在台北工作吗？
Does your friend work in Taipei?
B: **Tā bú zài Táiběi gōngzuò; tā zài Táizhōng gōngzuò.**
他不在台北工作。他在台中工作。
He doesn't work in Taipei; he works in Taichung.

Wǔguānchù, “defense attache’s office,” literally means “military attache’s office.”

Zài...gōngzuò: Compare these two sentences:

Tā	zài	Tánán.	
他/她	在	台南	
He	is in	Tainan.	
Tā	zài	Tánán	gōngzuò.
他/她	在	台南	工作。
He	in	Tainan	works.

The sentence **Tā zài Tánán gōngzuò** seems to have two verbs: **zài**, “to be in/at/on,” and **gōngzuò**, “to work.” But there is only one verb in the translation: “He works in Tainan.” The translation reflects the fact that **zài** loses its full verb status in this sentence and plays a role like that of the English preposition “in.” The **zài** phrase in Chinese, like the “in” phrase in English, gives more information about the main verb **gōngzuò**; that is, it tells where the action takes place. “He works,” and the work takes place “in Tainan.” In sentences like this, the word **zài** is a prepositional verb. Most relationships expressed by prepositions in English are expressed by prepositional verbs in Chinese.

You have also seen **zài** used as a prepositional verb in the sentence **Nǐ zhù zài nǎlǐ?** “Where do you live?”—literally, “You live at where?” Notice that in this sentence the prepositional verb phrase **zài nǎlǐ** comes after the main verb **zhù**. In the sentence **Nǐ zài nǎlǐ gōngzuò?** the prepositional verb phrase **zài nǎlǐ** comes before the main verb **gōngzuò**. Many things, such as stress, contrast, and other objects in the sentence, can influence the order of the prepositional verb phrase and the main verb.

In some cases, either order may be used, as in **Nǐ zài nǎlǐ zhù?** or **Nǐ zhù zài nǎlǐ?**. In other cases, the word order is fixed, as in **Nǐ zài nǎlǐ gōngzuò?** For text examples, it will be pointed out whether or not the word order may be changed, and the reasons will be given.

Tā bú zài Táiběi gōngzuò, “He doesn’t work in Taipei”: In this sentence, the negative adverb **bù** comes before the prepositional verb **zài** (which starts the complete predicate **zài Táiběi gōngzuò**, not before the main verb **gōngzuò**). This makes sense, for you are not saying “He does NOT WORK,” but you are saying “He does NOT work IN TAIPEI.”

Tā			gōngzuò.
他/她			工作。
Tā	bù		gōngzuò.
他/她	不		工作。
Tā		zài Táiběi	gōngzuò.
他/她		在台北	工作。
Tā	bù	zài Táiběi	gōngzuò.
他/她	不	在台北	工作。

Drills

Response drill

Respond according to the cues.

1. Lǐ xiānsheng zhù zài nǎlǐ?

李先生住在哪里？

Where is Mr. Lǐ staying?

Cue

Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn

国宾大饭店

Ambassador Hotel

Tā zhù zài Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn.

他住在国宾大饭店。

He is staying at the Ambassador Hotel.

2. Gāo xiānsheng zhù zài nǎlǐ?

高先生住在哪里？

Where is Mr. Gāo staying?

Cue

Yuánshān Dàfàndiàn

圆山大饭店

Yuánshān hotel

Tā zhù zài Yuánshān Dàfàndiàn.

他住在圆山大饭店。

He is staying at the Yuánshān hotel.

3. Yáng xiānsheng zhù zài nǎlǐ?

杨先生住在哪里？

Where is Mr. Yáng staying?

Cue

Dìyī Dàfàndiàn

第一大饭店

Grand Hotel

Tā zhù zài Dìyī Dàfàndiàn.

他住在第一大饭店。

He is staying at the Grand Hotel.

4. Táng xiānsheng zhù zai nǎlǐ?

唐先生住在哪里？

Where is Mr. Táng staying?

Cue zhèlǐ
这里
here

tā zhù zài zhèlǐ.

他住在这里里。

He is staying here.

5. Sīmǎ xiānsheng zhù zai nǎlǐ?

司马先生住在哪里？

Where is Mr. Sīmǎ staying?

Cue péngyou jiā
朋友家
friend's house

Tā zhù zai péngyou jiā.

他住在朋友家。

He is staying at his friend's house.

5. Liú xiānsheng zhù zai nǎlǐ?

刘先生住在哪里？

Where is Mr. Sīmǎ staying?

Cue nàlǐ
那里
there

Tā zhù zai nàlǐ.

他住在那里？

He is staying there.

7. Wáng xiānsheng zhù zai nǎlǐ?

王住住在哪里？

Where is Mr. Wáng staying?

Cue

Dìyī Dàfàndiàn

第一大饭店

Grand Hotel

Tā zhù zai Dìyī Dàfàndiàn.

他住在第一大饭店。

He is staying at the Grand Hotel.

Response drill

Respond according to the cues.

1. Tā péngyou jiā zài nǎlǐ?

他朋友家在哪里？

Where is your friend's house?

Cue

Bóài Lù

博爱路

Bóài road

Tā jiā zài Bóài Lù.

他家在博爱路。

His/her house is on Bóài road.

2. Lǐ xiānsheng jiā zài nǎlǐ?

李先生家在哪里？

Where is Mr. Lǐ house?

Cue

Dūnhuà Lù

敦化路

Dūnhuà road

Tā jiā zài Dūnhuà Lù

他家在敦化路。

His house is on Dūnhuà road.

3. Wáng xiānsheng jiā zài nǎlǐ?

王先生家在哪里？

Where is Mr. Wáng's house?

Cue

Nóngān Jiē

农安街

Nóngān street

Tā jiā zài Nóngān Jiē.

他家在农安街。

His house is on Nóngān street.

4. Hé xiānsheng jiā zài nǎlǐ?

何先生家在哪里？

Where is Mr. Hé's house?

Cue

Dàlǐ Jiē

大理街

Dàlǐ street

Tā jiā zài Dàlǐ Jiē.

他家在大理街。

His house is on Dàlǐ street.

5. Bāo xiānsheng jiā zài nǎlǐ?

包先生家在哪里？

Where is Mr. Bāo's house?

Cue

Nánjīng Lù

南京路

Nánjīng road

Tā jiā zài Nánjīng Lù

他家在南京路。

His house is on Nánjīng road.

6. Mǎ xiānsheng jiā zài nǎlǐ?

马先生家在哪里？

Where is Mr. Mǎ's house?

Cue

Zhōngshān Lù

中山路

Zhōngshān road

Tā jiā zài Zhōngshān.

他家在中山路。

His house is on Zhōngshān road.

7. Lín xiānsheng jiā zài nǎlǐ?

林先生家在哪里？

Where is Mr. Lín's house?

Cue

Zhèjiāng Jiē

浙江街
Zhèjiāng street

Tā jiā zài Zhèjiāng Jiē.

他家在浙江街。

His house is on Zhèjiāng street.

Response drill

According to each cue, respond with the appropriate street number on Dàlǐ street.

1. Nǐ péngyou de dìzhǐ shì...?

你朋友的地址是……？

What is your friend's address?

Cue

42 hào

四十二号

number 42

Tā de dìzhǐ shì Dàlǐ Jiē Sìshìèrhào.

他/她的地址是大理街四十二号。

His/her address is number 42 Dàlǐ street.

2. Nǐ péngyou de dìzhǐ shì...?

你朋友的地址是……？

What is your friend's address?

Cue

40 hào

四十号

number 40

Tā de dìzhǐ shì Dàlǐ Jiē Sìshíhào.

他/她的地址是大理街四十号。

His/her address is number 40 Dàlǐ street.

3. Nǐ péngyou de dìzhǐ shì...?

你朋友的地址是……？

What is your friend's address?

Cue

95 hào

九十五号

number 95

Tā de dìzhǐ shì Dàlǐ Jiē Jiǔshíwǔhào.

他/她的地址是大理街九十五号。

His/her address is number 95 Dàlǐ street.

4. Nǐ péngyou de dìzhǐ shì...?

你朋友的地址是……？

What is your friend's address?

Cue

26 hào

二十六号

number 26

Tā de dìzhǐ shì Dàlǐ Jiē Èrshiliùhào.

他/她的地址是大理街二十六号。

His/her address is number 26 Dàlǐ street.

5. Nǐ péngyou de dìzhǐ shì...?

你朋友的地址是……？

What is your friend's address?

Cue

77 hào

七十七号

number 77

Tā de dìzhǐ shì Dàlǐ Jiē Qīshíqīhào.

他/她的地址是大理街七十七号。

His/her address is number 77 Dàlǐ street.

6. Nǐ péngyou de dìzhǐ shì...?

你朋友的地址是……？

What is your friend's address?

Cue

68 hào

六十八号

number 68

Tā de dìzhǐ shì Dàlǐ Jiē Liùshíbāhào.

他/她的地址是大理街六十八号。

His/her address is number 68 Dàlǐ street.

7. Nǐ péngyou de dìzhǐ shì...?

你朋友的地址是……？

What is your friend's address?

Cue

44 hào

四十四号

number 44

Tā de dìzhǐ shì Dàlǐ Jiē Sìshísihào.

他/她的地址是大理街四十四号。

His/her address is number 44 Dàlǐ street.

Response drill

Give the appropriate Táiwān street addresses according to the cues.

1. Nǐ péngyou de dìzhǐ shì...?

你朋友的地址是……？

What is your friend's address?

Cue

Dàlǐ Jiē 43 hào

大理街十四三号

42 Dàlǐ street

Tā de dìzhǐ shì Dàlǐ Jiē Sìshìèrhào.

他/她的地址是大理街十四三号。

His/her address is number 42 Dàlǐ street.

2. Nǐ péngyou de dìzhǐ shì...?

你朋友的地址是……？

What is your friend's address?

Cue

Bóài Lù 94 hào

博爱路九十四号

94 Bóài road

Tā de dìzhǐ shì Bóài Lù Jiǔshìsìhào.

他/她的地址是博爱路九十四号。

His/her address is number 95 Bóài road.

3. Nǐ péngyou de dìzhǐ shì...?

你朋友的地址是……？

What is your friend's address?

Cue

Dūnhuà Lù 55 hào

敦化路五十五号

55 Dūnhuà road

Tā de dìzhǐ shì Dūnhuà Lù Wǔshiwǔhào.

他/她的地址是敦化路五十五号。

His/her address is number 55 Dūnhuà road.

4. Nǐ péngyou de dìzhǐ shì...?

你朋友的地址是……？

What is your friend's address?

Cue Nóngān Jiē 75 hào
农安街七十五号
75 Nóngān street

Tā de dìzhǐ shì Nóngān Qīshíwǔhào.

他/她的地址是农安街七十五号。

His/her address is number 75 Nóngān street.

5. Nǐ péngyou de dìzhǐ shì...?

你朋友的地址是……？

What is your friend's address?

Cue Dàlǐ Jiē 42 hào
大理解四十二号
42 Dàlǐ street

Tā de dìzhǐ shì Dàlǐ Jiē Sìshíèrhào.

他/她的地址是大理街四十二号。

His/her address is number 42 Dàlǐ street.

6. Nǐ péngyou de dìzhǐ shì...?

你朋友的地址是……？

What is your friend's address?

Cue Dūnhuà Lù 55 hào
敦化路五十五号
55 Dūnhuà road

Tā de dìzhǐ shì Dūnhuà Lù Wǔshíwǔhào.

他/她的地址是敦化路五十五号。

His/her address is number 55 Dūnhuà road.

7. Nǐ péngyou de dìzhǐ shì...?

你朋友的地址是……？

What is your friend's address?

Cue

Bóài Lù 94 hào
博爱路九十四号
94 Bóài road

Tā de dìzhǐ shì Bóài Lù Jiǔshísìhào.

他/她的地址是博爱路九十四号。

His/her address is number 94 Bóài road.

Transformation drill

Respond according to the model.

1. Mǎ tàitai jiā zài Dàlǐ Jiē Sìshìèrhào.

马太太家在大理街四十二号。

Mǎ's house is at N°42 Dàlǐ street.

Tā de dìzhǐ shì Dàlǐ Jiē Sìshìèrhào.

她的地址是大理街四十二号。

Her address is N°42 Dàlǐ street.

2. Zhào tàitai jiā zài Bóài Lù Jiǔshìsìhào.

赵太太家在博爱路九十四号。

Mrs. Zhào's house is at N°94 Bóài road.

Tā de dìzhǐ shì Bóài Lù Jiǔshìsìhào.

她的地址是博爱路九十四号。

Her address is N°94 Bóài road.

3. Lǐ tàitai jiā zài Dūnhuà Lù Wǔshíwǔhào.

李太太家在敦化路五十五号。

Mrs. Lǐ's house is at Dūnhuà road.

Tā de dìzhǐ shì Dūnhuà Lù Wǔshíwǔhào.

她的地址是敦化路五十五号。

Her address is N°55 Dūnhuà road.

4. Hé tàitai jiā zài Nóngān Jiē Qīshíwǔhào.

何太太家在农安街七十五号。

Mrs. Hé's house is at N°75 Nóngān street.

Tā de dìzhǐ shì Nóngān Jiē Qīshíwǔhào.

她的地址是农安街七十五号。

Her address is N°75 Nóngān street.

5. Gāo tàitai jiā zài Dàlǐ Jiē Sìshìèrhào.

高太太家在大理街四十二号。

Mrs. Gāo's house is at N°42 Dàlǐ street.

Tā de dìzhǐ shì Dàlǐ Jiē Sìshìèrhào.

她的地址是大理街四十二号。

Her address is N°42 Dàlǐ street.

6. Wáng tàitai jiā zài Bóài Lù Jiǔshìsìhào.

王太太家在博爱路九十四号。

Mrs. Wáng's house is at N°94 Bóài road.

Tā de dìzhǐ shì Bóài Lù Jiǔshìsìhào.

她的地址是博爱路九十四号。

Her address is N°94 Bóài road.

7. Lín tàitai jiā zài Dūnhuà Lù Wǔshíwǔhào.

林太太家在敦化路五十五号。

Mrs. Lín's house is at N°55 Dūnhuà road.

Tā de dìzhǐ shì Dūnhuà Lù Wǔshíwǔhào.

她的地址是敦化路五十五号。

Her address is N°55 Dūnhuà road.

Transformation drill

Change each **ma** question to a **ba** question.

1. Nín shì Wèi shàoxiào ma?

您是魏少校吗？

Are you Major Weiss?

Nín shì Wèi shàoxiào ba?

您是魏少校吧？

You are Major Weiss, aren't you?

2. Tā shì Zhāng shàoxiào ma?

他是张少校吗？

Is he Major Zhāng?

Tā shì Zhāng shàoxiào ba?

他是张少校吧？

He is Major Zhāng, isn't he?

3. Nín shì Huáng xiǎojiě ma?

您是黄小姐吗？

Are you Miss Huáng?

Nín shì Huáng xiǎojiě ba?

您是黄小姐吧？

You are Miss Huáng, aren't you?

4. Nà shì Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn ma?

那是国宾大饭店吗？

Is that the Nationalities Hotel?

Nà shì Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn ba?

那是国宾大饭店吧？

That is the Nationalities Hotel, isn't it?

5. Zhè shì Dìyī Dàfàndiàn ma?

这是第一大饭店吗？

Is this the Grand Hotel?

Zhè shì Dìyī Dàfàndiàn ba?

这是第一大饭店吧？

This is the Grand Hotel, isn't it?

6. Nàwèi shì Wáng tàitai ma?

那位是王太太吗？

Is that person Mrs. Wáng?

Nàwèi shì Wáng tàitai ba?

那位是王太太吧。

This person is Mrs. Wáng, isn't it?

7. Nà shì Yuánshān Dàfàndiàn ma?

那是圆山大饭店吗？

Is that the Yuánshān hotel?

Nà shì Yuánshān Dàfàndiàn ba?

那是圆山大饭店吧？

That is the Yuánshān hotel, isn't it?

Response drill

Give an answer according to the cues.

1. Tā zài nǎlǐ gōngzuò?

他/她在哪里工作？

Where does he/she work?

Cue

Táiběi

台北

Taipei

Tā zài Táiběi gōngzuò.

他/她在台北工作。

He/she works in Taipei.

2. Tā zài nǎlǐ gōngzuò?

他/她在哪里工作？

Where does he/she work?

Cue

Táinán

台南

T'ai-nan

Tā zài Táinán gōngzuò.

他/她在台南工作。

He/she works in T'ai-nan.

3. Tā zài nǎlǐ gōngzuò?

他/她在哪里工作？

Where does he/she work?

Cue

Táizhōng

台中

T'ai-chung

Tā zài Táizhōng gōngzuò.

他/她在台中工作。

He/she works in T'ai-chung.

4. Tā zài nǎlǐ gōngzuò?
他/她在哪里工作?
Where dos he/she works?

Cue Gāoxióng
高雄
Kao-hsiung

Tā zài Gāoxióng gōngzuò.
他/她在高雄工作。
He/she works in Kao-hsiung.

5. Tā zài nǎlǐ gōngzuò?
他/她在哪里工作?
Where dos he/she works?

Cue Jílóng
基隆
Chi-lung

Tā zài Jílóng gōngzuò.
他他/她在基隆工作。
He/she works in Chi-lung.

6. Tā zài nǎlǐ gōngzuò?
他/她在哪里工作?
Where dos he/she works?

Cue Táiběi
台北
Taipei

Tā zài Táiběi Gōngzuò.
他/她在台北工作。
He/she works in Taipei.

7. Tā zài nǎlǐ gōngzuò?
他/她在哪里工作?
Where dos he/she works?

Cue Táizhōng

台中

T'ai-chung

Tā zài Táizhōng gōngzuò.

他/她在台中工作。

He/she works in T'ai-chung.

Response drill

Give affirmative response to all questions.

1. Tā zài yóuzhèngjú gōngzuò ma?

他/她在邮政局工作吗？

Does he/she works at the post office?

Duì le, tā zài yóuzhèngjú gōngzuò.

对了，他/她在邮政局工作。

Yes, he/she works at the post office.

2. Tā zài Wǔguānchù gōngzuò ma?

他/她在武官处工作吗？

Does he/she works at the military attache's office?

Duì le, tā zài Wǔguānchù gōngzuò.

对了，他/她在武官处工作。

Yes, he/she works at the military attache's office.

3. Tā zài yínháng gōngzuò ma?

他/她在银行工作吗？

Does he/she works at the bank?

Duì le, tā zài yínháng gōngzuò.

对了，他/她在银行工作。

Yes, he/she works at the bank?

4. Tā zài Měiguó yínháng gōngzuò ma?

他/她在美国银行工作吗？

Does he/she works at the Bank of America?

Duì le, tā zài Měiguó yínháng gōngzuò.

对了，他/她在美国银行工作。

Yes, he/she works at the Bank of America.

5. Tā zài Táiwān yínháng gōngzuò ma?

他/她在台湾银行工作吗？

Does he/she works at the Bank of Táiwān?

Duì le, tā zài Táiwān yínyáng gōngzuò.

对了，他/她在台湾银行工作。

Yes, he/she works at the Bank of Táiwān.

6. Tā zài Wǔguānchù gōngzuò ma?

他/她在武官处工作吗？

Does he/she works at the military attache's office?

Duì le, tā zài Wǔguānchù gōngzuò.

对了，他/她在武官处工作。

Yes, he/she works at the military attache's office.

7. Tā zài yóuzhèngjú gōngzuò ma?

他/她在邮政局工作吗？

Does he/she works at the post office?

Duì le, tā zài yóuzhèngjú gōngzuò.

对了，他/她在邮政局工作。

Yes, he/she works at the post office.

Transformation drill

Add **xiànzài**, “now” to each statement.

1. Zhōu xiānsheng zài Táiběi gōngzuò.

周先生在台北工作。

Mr. Zhōu works in Táiběi.

Zhōu xiānsheng xiànzài zài Táiběi gōngzuò.

周先生现在在台北工作。

Mr. Zhōu is working in Táiběi now.

2. Zhāng xiānsheng zài Táizhōng gōngzuò.

张先生在台中工作。

Mr. Zhāng works in Táizhōng.

Zhāng xiānsheng xiànzài zài Táizhōng gōngzuò.

张先生现在在台中工作。

Mr. Zhāng is working in Táizhōng now.

3. Hú xiǎojiě zài Táinán gōngzuò.

胡小姐在台南工作。

Miss Hú works in Táinán.

Hú xiǎojiě xiànzài zài Táinán gōngzuò.

胡小姐现在在台南工作。

Miss Hú is working in Táinán now.

4. Mǎ xiǎojiě zài Gāoxióng gōngzuò.

马小姐在高雄工作。

Miss Mǎ works in Gāoxióng.

Mǎ xiǎojiě xiànzài zài Gāoxióng gōngzuò.

马小姐现在在高雄工作。

Miss Mǎ is working in Gāoxióng now.

5. Zhào xiānsheng zài Jīlóng gōngzuò.

赵先生在基隆工作。

Mr. Zhào works in Jīlóng.

Zhào xiānsheng xiànzài zài Jīlóng gōngzuò.

赵先生现在在基隆工作。

Mr. Zhào is working in Jīlóng now.

6. Chén xiānsheng zài Táiběi gōngzuò.

陈先生现在在台北工作。

Mr. Chén works in Táiběi.

Chén xiānsheng xiànzài zài Táiběi gōngzuò.

陈先生现在在台北工作。

Mr. Chén is working in Táiběi now.

7. Jiāng xiǎojiě zài Gāoxióng gōngzuò.

江小姐现在在高雄工作。

Miss Jiāng works in Gāoxióng.

Jiāng xiǎojiě xiànzài zài Gāoxióng gōngzuò.

江小姐现在在高雄工作。

Miss Jiāng is working in Gāoxióng now.

Transformation drill

Make each statement negative by changing **zài** to **bú zài**.

1. Hú tóngzhì zài Běijīng gōngzuò.

胡同志在北京工作。

Comrade Hú works in Běijīng.

Hú tóngzhì bú zài Běijīng gōngzuò.

胡同志不在北京工作。

Comrade Hú doesn't work in Běijīng.

2. Lǐ tóngzhì zài Nánjīng gōngzuò.

李同志在南京工作。

Comrade Lǐ works in Nánjīng.

Lǐ tóngzhì bú zài Nánjīng gōngzuò.

李同志不在南京工作。

Comrade Lǐ doesn't work in Nánjīng.

3. Tā zài Qīngdǎo gōngzuò.

他/她在青岛工作。

He/she works in Qīngdǎo.

Tā bú zài Qīngdǎo gōngzuò.

他/她不在青岛工作。

He/she doesn't work in Qīngdǎo.

4. Lín tóngzhì zài Guǎngzhōu gōngzuò.

林同志在广州工作。

Comrade Lín works in Guǎngzhōu.

Lín tóngzhì bú zài Guǎngzhōu gōngzuò.

林同志不在广州工作。

Comrade Lín doesn't work in Guǎngzhōu.

5. Zhào tóngzhì zài Shànghǎi gōngzuò.

赵同志在上海工作。

Comrade Zhào works in Shànghǎi.

Zhào tóngzhì bú zài Shànghǎi gōngzuò.

赵同志不在上海工作。

Comrade Zhào doesn't work in Shànghǎi.

6. Chén tóngzhì zài Qīngdǎo gōngzuò.

陈同志在青岛工作。

Comrade Chén works in Qīngdǎo.

Chén tóngzhì bú zài Qīngdǎo gōngzuò.

陈同志不在青岛工作。

Comrade Chén doesn't work in Qīngdǎo.

7. Huáng tóngzhì zài Běijīng gōngzuò.

黄同志在北京工作。

Comrade Huáng works in Běijīng.

Huáng tóngzhì bú zài Běijīng gōngzuò.

黄同志不在北京工作。

Comrade Huáng doesn't work in Běijīng.

Response drill

Give negative response to the questions, adding correct information according to the cues.

1. Hú xiǎojiě zài Táiběi gōngzuò ma?

胡小姐在台北工作吗？

Does Miss Hú work in Taipei?

Cue

Táinán

台南

T'ai-nan

Tā bú zài Táiběi gōngzuò; tā zài Táinán gōngzuò.

她不在台北工作。她在台南工作。

She doesn't work in Taipei; she works in Tainan.

2. Lǐ tàitai zài Táizhōng gōngzuò ma?

李太太在台中工作吗？

Does Mrs. Lǐ work in Táizhōng?

Cue

Jílóng

基隆

Chi-lung

Tā bú zài Táizhōng gōngzuò; tā zài Jílóng gōngzuò.

她不在台中工作。她在基隆工作。

She doesn't work in T'ai-chung; she works in Chi-lung.

3. Mǎ xiānsheng zài zhèlǐ gōngzuò ma?

马先生在这里工作吗？

Does Mr. Mǎ work here?

Cue

Gāoxióng

高雄

Kao-hsiung

Tā bú zài zhèlǐ gōngzuò; tā zài Gāoxióng gōngzuò.

他不在这里工作。他在高雄工作。

He doesn't work here. He works in Kao-hsiung.

4. Tā zài Wúguānchù gōngzuò ma?
他/她在武官处工作吗?
Does he/she work in the defense attache office?

Cue Měiguó Yínháng
美国银行
Bank of America

Tā bú zài Měiguó gōngzuò; tā zài Měiguó Yínháng gōngzuò.

他/她不在武官处工作。他/她在美国银行工作。

He doesn't work in the military attaché's office; he works in the Bank of America.

5. Tā zài yóuzhèngjú gōngzuò ma?
他/她在邮政局工作吗?
Does he work in the post office?

Cue Táiwān Yínháng
台湾银行
Bank of Taiwan

Tā bú zài yóuzhèngjú gōngzuò; tā zài Táiwān Yínháng gōngzuò

他/她不在邮政局工作。他/她在台湾银行工作。

He doesn't work in the post office; he works in the Bank of Taiwan.

6. Lín xiānsheng zài nàlǐ gōngzuò ma?
林先生在那里工作吗?
Does Mr. Lín work there?

Cue zhèlǐ
这里
here

Tā bú zài nàlǐ gōngzuò; tā zài zhèlǐ gōngzuò.

他不在那里工作。他在这里工作。

He doesn't work here; he works there.

7. Liú xiǎojiě zài Táiběi gōngzuò ma?
刘小姐在台北工作吗?
Does Miss Liú work in Taipei?

Cue

Táizhōng

台中

T'ai-chung

Tā bú zài Táiběi gōngzuò; tā zài Táizhōng gōngzuò.

她不在台北工作。她在台中工作。

She doesn't work in Taipei; she works in T'ai-chung.

Response drill

Give an affirmative or negative response according to the cues.

1. Tā zài Táiběi gōngzuò ma?

他/她在台北工作吗？

Does he/she work in Taipei?

Cue

Táiběi

台北

Taipei

Duì le, tā zài Táiběi gōngzuò.

对了，他/她在台北工作。

Yes, he/she works in Taipei.

2. Tā zài Táiběi gōngzuò ma?

他/她在台北工作吗？

Does he/she work in Taipei?

Cue

Táinán

台南

T'ai-nan

Tā bú zài Táiběi gōngzuò; tā zài Táinán gōngzuò.

他/她不在台北工作。他/她在台南工作。

No, he/she doesn't work in Taipei. he/she works in T'ai-nan.

3. Tā zài Táizhōng gōngzuò ma?

他/她在台中工作吗？

Does he/she work in T'ai-chung.

Cue

Jīlóng

基隆

Chi-lung

Tā bú zài Táizhōng gōngzuò; tā zài Jīlóng gōngzuò.

他/她不在台中工作。他/她在基隆工作。

No he/she doesn't work in T'ai-chung. He/she works in Chi-lung.

4. Tā zài zhèlì gōngzuò ma?

他/她在这里工作吗？

Does he/she work here?

Cue zhèlì
这里
here

Duì le, tā zài zhèlì gōngzuò.

对了，他/她在这里工作。

Yes, he/she works here.

5. Tā zài yóuzhèngjú gōngzuò ma?

他/她在邮政局工作吗？

Does he/she work at the post office?

Cue Táiwān yínháng
台湾银行
Bank of Taiwan

Tā bú zài yóuzhèngjú gōngzuò; tā zài Táiwān Yínháng gōngzuò.

他/她不在邮政局工作。他/她在台湾银行工作吗。

He/she doesn't work at the post office. He/she works at the Bank of Taiwan.

6. Tā zài Wǔguānchù gōngzuò ma?

他/她在武官处工作吗？

Does he/she work at the defense attache office?

Cue zhèlì
这里
here

Tā bú zài Wǔguānchù gōngzuò; tā zài zhèlì gōngzuò.

他/她不在武官处工作。他/她在这里工作。

No, he/she doesn't work at the defense attache office. He/she works here.

7. Tā zài Měiguó Yínháng gōngzuò ma?

他/她在美国银行工作吗？

Does he/she work at the Bank of America?

Cue Měiguó Yínháng

美国银行

Bank of America

Duì le, tā zài Měiguó Yínháng gōngzuò.

对了，他/她在美国银行工作。

Yes, he/she works at the Bank of America.

Unit 3

Introduction

Topics covered in this unit

1. Members of a family.
2. The plural ending **-men**.
3. The question word **jǐ**- “how many.”
4. The adverb **dōu** “all.”
5. Several ways to express “and.”

Material you will need

1. The C-1 and P-1 tapes, the Reference List and Reference Notes.
2. The C-2 and P-2 tapes, the Workbook.
3. The 3D-1 tape.

References

Reference List

1. A: Nǐmen yǒu hái zi ma?
你们有孩子吗？
Do you have children?
B: Yǒu, wǒmen yǒu.
有，我们有。
Yes, we have.

2. B: Liú xiānsheng yǒu Měiguó péngyou ma?
刘先生有美国朋友吗？
Does Mr Liú have any American friends?
A: Tā méiyǒu Měiguó péngyou.
他没有美国朋友。
He doesn't have any American friends.
A: Tā yǒu Yīngguó péngyou.
他有英国朋友。
He has English friends. (or an English friend)

3. A: Nǐmen yǒu jǐ ge hái zi?
你们有几个孩子？
How many children do you have?
B: Wǒmen yǒu sān ge hái zi.
我们三个孩子。
We have three children.

4. A: Nǐmen yǒu jǐ ge nán hái zi, jǐ ge nǚ hái zi?
你们有几个男孩子，几个女孩子？
How many boys and how many girls do you have?
B: Wǒmen yǒu liǎng ge nán hái zi, yī ge nǚ hái zi.
我们两个男孩子，一个女孩子。
We have two boys and one girl.

5. B: Shì nán hái zi, shì nǚ hái zi?
是男孩子，是女孩子？
Are they boys or girls?
A: Tāmen dōu shì nǚ hái zi.

他们都是女孩子。

All of them are girls.

6. B: Hú xiānsheng, tàitai ne? Tāmen yǒu jǐge hái zi?
胡先生，太太呢？他们有几个孩子？
How about Mr. and Mrs. Hú? How many children do they have?
A: Tāmen yǒu liǎngge hái zi.
他们有两个孩子。
They have two children.
B: Shì nánhái zi, shì nǚhái zi?
是男孩子，是女孩子？
Are they boys or girls?
A: Dōu shì nǚhái zi.
都是女孩子。
Both of them are girls.
7. A: Nǐmen hái zi dōu zài zhè li ma?
你们孩子都在这里吗？
Are all your children here?
B: Bù, liǎngge zài zhè li, yíge hái zài Měi guó.
不，两个在这里，一个还在美国。
No. Two are here, and one is still in America.
8. A: Nǐ jiā li yǒu shén me rén?
你家里有什么人？
What people are (there) in your family?
B: Yǒu wǒ tàitai gēn sān ge hái zi.
有我太太跟三个孩子。
There's my wife and three children.
9. B: Nǐ jiā li yǒu shén me rén?
你家里有什么人？
What people are (there) in your family?
A: Jiù (yǒu) wǒ fù qin, mǔ qin.
就（有）我父亲，母亲。
Just my father and mother.

Vocabulary

zhǐ	只	only
dìdi	弟弟	younger brother
gēge	哥哥	older brother
jiějie	姐姐	older sister
mèimei	妹妹	younger sister
xiōngdì	兄弟	brothers
jiěmèi	姐妹	sisters
xiōngdì jiěmèi	兄弟姐妹	brothers and sisters
fùmǔ	父母	parents
zǔfù	祖父	paternal grandfather
zǔmǔ	祖母	paternal grandmother
wàizǔfù	外祖父	maternal grandfather
wàizǔmǔ	外祖母	maternal grandmother
bàba	爸爸	papa, dad, father
māma	妈妈	momma, mom, mother
dōu	都	all, both
fùqin	父亲	father
gēn	跟	and, with, and (in addition to)
hái	还	still, yet
háizi	孩子	children, child
jǐ-	几—	how many
jiāli	家里	family
jǐge	几个	how many
jiù	就	only, just
liǎng-	两	two
méi	没	not, not to have
méiyǒu	没有	not to have, there is not
-men	们	plural suffix
mǔqin	母亲	mother
nán-	男—	male
nánháizi	男孩子	boy
nǐmen	你们	you (plural)

nǚ-	女—	female
nǚháizi	女孩子	girl
tāmen	他们	they, them
wǒmen	我们	we, us
yǒu	有	to have, there is
zhǐ	只	only
yíng le	赢了	I('ve) won

Reference Notes

Notes on №1

1. A: **Nǐmen yǒu hái zi ma?**
 你们有孩子吗？
 Do you have children?
- B: **Yǒu, wǒmen yǒu.**
 有，我们有。
 Yes, we have.

The plural pronouns are formed by adding -men to the singular pronouns

singular		plural	
wǒ	I	wǒmen	we
我		我们	
nǐ	you	nǐmen	you
你		你们	
tā	he/she	tāmen	they
他/她		他/她们	

(You have already seen these pronoun forms used as possessives: “my,” “our,” etc. Later you will find that they are also used as objects: “me,” “us,” etc.)

Háizi: Chinese nouns have the same form for singular and plural.

Háizi may be either “child” or “children.”³ Usually the context will make clear whether a noun should be translated as singular or as plural, but not always. Chinese does not require that the matter be pinned down to the same extent that English does.

Wǒmen yǒu hái zi is a perfectly good sentence, even though the only accurate translation is the clumsy “We have one or more children.” We would prefer to have enough information to translate it either as “We have a child” or as “We have children.”

At times this ambiguity is an advantage. When you ask **Nǐmen yǒu hái zi ma?** you do not, after all, know whether you are referring to one child or to more than one child. To cover both bets in the same way in English, we have to say “Do you have any children?”

³A few nouns referring to people may be made explicitly plural by adding -men. **Háizimen** can only be “children”

Notes on №2

2. B: Liú xiānsheng yǒu Měiguó péngyou ma?
刘先生有美国朋友吗?
Does Mr Liú have any American friends?
- B: Tā méiyǒu Měiguó péngyou.
他没有美国朋友。
He doesn't have any American friends.
- A: Tā yǒu Yīngguó péngyou.
他有英国朋友。
He has English friends. (or an English friend)

Méi you: All the verbs discussed so far form the negative with **bù**, with the single exception of **yǒu**, "to have," which has the irregular negative form **méiyou**.

Notes on №3-4

3. A: **Nǐmen yǒu jǐge hái zi?**
你们有几个孩子？
How many children do you have?
B: **Wǒmen yǒu sānge hái zi.**
我们三个孩子。
We have three children.
4. A: **Nǐmen yǒu jǐge nán hái zi, jǐge nǚ hái zi?**
你们有几个男孩子，几个女孩子？
How many boys and how many girls do you have?
B: **Wǒmen yǒu liǎngge nán hái zi, yíge nǚ hái zi.**
我们两个男孩子，一个女孩子。

In Peking speech, **jǐ-**, “how many,” is usually used only when the number expected in an answer is about 10 or less. In many other parts of China, speakers use **jǐ-** no matter how large a number is expected in the answer.

Counters: In Chinese, a noun cannot be counted or specified (i.e., used with **něi-** “which,” **nèi-**, “that,” **zhèi-**, “this”) without the addition of a bound word, a counter, to indicate the sort of thing being specified or counted. English has a few such counters, as “head” in “how many head of cattle” and “loaves” in “seven loaves of bread.”

The counter used in a particular instance depends on the noun being specified or counted. Many nouns have special counters. You have already learned the polite counter for persons, **-wèi**. Other special counters refer in some way to the kind of thing the noun represents. The word for “hotel,” for instance, has a special counter **-jiā**, “house,” used for counting or specifying business establishments.

The general counter **-ge** is used with nouns that do not have special counters. For example, there is no special counter for the word **pùbù**, “waterfall,” so you would say **yíge pùbù**, “one waterfall.” You have already found the general counter **-ge** in specifying expressions such as **něige hái zi**, “which child,” and **zhèige fǎndiàn**, “this hotel.”

You may find that, in colloquial speech, nouns that have special counters are sometimes used with **-ge** anyway, but this tendency is looked down upon by many speakers.

Here are the numbers 1 through 10 with the counter **-ge**:

yíge liǎngge sānge sìge wǔge liùge qíge bāge jiǔge shíge

The number 2 has a special form before a counter: **liǎng-**. Notice that the words for 1, 2, and 8 have Rising tones before **-ge**, because **-ge** is basically a Falling-tone syllable. (See also Unit 5, notes on No. 9 and No. 10.)

Nán- nǚ-: The “bound words **nán-** “male,” and **nǚ-**, “female,” are often used in compounds; for example, **nán péng you**, “boyfriend,” and **nǚ tóng zhì** “(woman) Comrade.”

And: In Chinese, a word for “and” is not needed between parallel phrases like *liǎngge nánháizi, yíge nǚháizi* “two boys, (and) one girl.” A pause is usual between the two phrases, but even the pause is sometimes omitted.

Notes on №5-7

5. B: **Shì nánháizi, shì nǚháizi?**
是男孩子，是女孩子？
Are they boys or girls?
A: **Tāmen dōu shì nǚháizi.**
他们都是女孩子。
All of them are girls.
6. B: **Hú xiānsheng, tàitai ne? tāmen yǒu jǐge háizi?**
胡先生，太太呢？他们有几个孩子？
How about Mr. and Mrs. Hú? How many children do they have?
A: **Tāmen yǒu liǎngge háizi.**
他们有两个孩子。
They have two children.
B: **Shì nánháizi, shì nǚháizi?**
是男孩子，是女孩子？
Are they boys or girls?
A: **Dōu shì nǚháizi.**
都是女孩子。
Both of them are girls.
7. A: **Nǐmen háizi dōu zài zhèlì ma?**
你们孩子都在这里吗？
Are all your children here?
B: **Bù, liǎngge zài zhèlì, yíge hái zài Měiguó.**
不，两个在这里，一个还在美国。
No. Two are here, and one is still in America.

Shì nánháizi, shì nǚháizi? In Chinese, an “or” question (i.e., a question asking which of two alternatives is true) may be asked simply by stating the two alternatives with a pause between. In this kind of question, the verb must appear in each alternative. (You will learn other ways of making “or” questions in later modules.)

Dōu may usually be translated in a sentence as “all (of),” or, if it refers to only two things, as “both (of).” Literally, **dōu** means “in all cases,” “uniformly,” “entirely,” “completely.” Since it is an adverb, it must be placed after the subject of a sentence and before the verb (like the adverb **yě**, “also”).

Notes on №8-9

8. A: **Nǐ jiāli yǒu shénme rén?**
 你家里有什么人?
 What people are (there) in your family?
- B: **Yǒu wǒ tàitai gēn sānge háiizi.**
 有我太太跟三个孩子。
 There's my wife and three children.
9. B: **Nǐ jiāli yǒu shénme rén?**
 你家里有什么人?
 What people are (there) in your family?
- A: **Jiù yǒu wǒ fùqin, mǔqin.**
 就有我父亲，母亲。
 Just my father and mother.

Literally, the phrase **nǐ jiāli** means “in your home” (**jiā**, “home”; **-li**, “in”#. In this sentence it is extended to mean “the people in your home, “that is, “your family.”

Nǐ jiāli - yǒu - shénme rén? Phrase by phrase, this question is: “In your family - there are - what people?,” The word “family” can be taken to mean either all your relatives or only those living in your household.

By itself, the verb **yǒu** means “to “be,” “to exist.” You have now seen it translated two ways:

1. as “have,” with a personal subject: **Wǒmen yǒu sānge háiizi.** “We have three children.”
2. as “there is/are,” in the so-called impersonal construction: **Nǐ jiāli yǒu shénme rén?** “What people are (there) in your family?”

In exchange 8, the verb **yǒu** in the answer is translated as “there’s.” Some English speakers may find this translation too colloquial. The answer can also be translated just by listing the family members, with no verb in the English, as was done in exchange 9. Chinese almost always keeps the verb in the answer to a question, while English tends to leave it out.

How to say “and”: Chinese has several words for “and.” **Gēn** is the word for “and” when joining nouns or noun phrases. **Yě** is the word for “and” when joining verbs, verb phrases, or whole sentences:

Example 1.1. Example:

Wǒ bú xìng Lǐ, yě bú xìng Lǚ. Wǒ xìng Lǚ.

I’m not surnamed **Lǐ** and I’m not surnamed **Lǚ**. I’m surnamed **Lǚ**.

Chinese tends to use a word for “and” when the noun phrases being joined are not parallel and not to use one when the phrases are parallel:

Not parallel

Yǒu	wǒ tàitai Possessor noun	gēn	sānge háizi. number noun	There's my wife and 3 children.
Parallel				
Yǒu	liǎngge nánháizi number noun	,	yíge nǚháizi. number noun	There are 2 boys and one girl.

While “and” is often omitted in Chinese, it may be added for emphasis between nouns and between noun phrases just as in English.

Jiù, “only,” “just,” is an adverb (like yě and dōu. The use of jiù to mean “only” is probably mostly confined to the Peking dialect.⁴ Speakers from other parts of the country will not necessarily use jiù to mean “only” or understand it as such. A more widely used and understood word for “only” is zhǐ. Thus the answer in exchange 9 could also be: Zhǐ yǒu wǒ fùqīn, mǔqīn.

⁴Jiù has several other meanings, which will be presented to you as you continue through this course.

Notes on additional vocabulary

Chinese is much more precise than English in its terms for family members. There is not just one word for “brother,” or “sister” but words for “older brother,” “younger brother,” “older sister,” and “younger sister.”

	older	younger		
brother	gēge	dìdi	brothers	xiōngdì
	哥哥	弟弟		兄弟
sister	jiějie	mèimei	sisters	jiěmèi
	姐姐	妹妹		姐妹

When referring to both older and younger sisters, the term **jiěmèi** is used. When referring to both older and younger brothers, the term **xiōngdì** is used. When referring to sisters and brothers, the phrase **xiōngdì jiěmèi** is used.

Chinese also distinguishes between grandparents on the father’s side of the family and grandparents on the mother’s side:

	father’s side	mother’s side
grandfather	zǔfù	wàizǔfù
	祖父	外祖父
grandmother	zǔmǔ	wàizǔmǔ
	祖母	外祖母

The syllable **wài-** in **wàizǔfù** and **wàizǔmǔ** literally means “outer” or “outside.”

Drills

Response drill

Give affirmatives answers using **yǒu**.

1. Tā yǒu Měiguó péngyou ma?

他/她有美国朋友吗？

Does he/she have any American friends?

Yǒu, tā yǒu Měiguó péngyou.

有，他/她有美国朋友。

Yes, he/she has some American friends.

2. Tā yǒu Zhōngguó péngyou ma?

他/她有中国朋友吗？

Does he/she have any Chinese friends?

Yǒu, tā yǒu Zhōngguó péngyou.

有，他/她有中国朋友。

Yes, he/she has some Chinese friends.

3. Tā yǒu Déguó péngyou ma?

他/她有德国朋友吗？

Does he/she have any German friends?

Yǒu, tā yǒu Déguó péngyou.

有，他/她有德国朋友。

Yes, he/she has some German friends.

4. Tā yǒu Rìběn péngyou ma?

他/她有日本朋友吗？

Does he/she have any Japanese friends?

Yǒu, tā yǒu Rìběn péngyou.

有，他/她有日本朋友。

Yes, he/she has some Japanese friends.

5. Tā yǒu Jiānádà péngyou ma?

他/她有加拿大朋友吗？

Does he/she have any Canadian friends?

Yǒu, tā yǒu Jiānádà pényou.

有，他/她有加拿大朋友。

Yes, he/she has some Canadian friends.

6. Tā yǒu Èguó péngyou ma?

他/她有俄国朋友吗？

Does he/she have any Russian friends?

Yǒu, tā yǒu Èguó péngyou.

有，他/她有俄国朋友。

Yes, he/she has some Russian friends.

7. Tā yǒu Yīngguó péngyou ma?

他/她有英国朋友吗？

Does he/she have any English friends?

Yǒu, tā yǒu Yīngguó péngyou.

有，他/她有英国朋友。

Yes, he/she has some English friends.

Response drill

Give affirmative answers using **yǒu**.

1. Tā yǒu gēge ma?

他/她有哥哥吗？

Does he/she have an older brother?

Yǒu, tā yǒu gēge.

有，他/她有哥哥。

Yes, he/she has an older brother.

2. Tā yǒu jiějie ma?

他/她有姐姐吗？

Does he/she have an older sister?

Yǒu, tā yǒu jiějie.

有，他/她有姐姐。

Yes, he/she has an older sister.

3. Tā yǒu dìdi ma?

他/她有弟弟吗？

Does he/she have a younger brother?

Yǒu, tā yǒu dìdi.

有，他/她有弟弟。

Yes, he/she has a younger brother.

4. Tā yǒu mèimei ma?

他/她有妹妹吗？

Does he/she have a younger sister?

Yǒu, tā yǒu mèimei.

有，他/她有妹妹。

Yes, he/she has a younger sister.

5. Tāmen yǒu hái zi ma?

他/她有孩子吗？

Does he/she have children?

Yǒu, tāmen yǒu hái zi.

有，他/她有孩子。

Yes, he/she has children.

6. Tāmen yǒu nánháizi ma?

他/她有男孩子吗？

Does he/she have boys?

Yǒu, tāmen yǒu nánháizi.

有，他/她有男孩子。

Yes, he/she has boys.

7. Tāmen yǒu nǚháizi ma?

他/她有女孩子吗？

Does he/she have girls?

Yǒu, tāmen yǒu nǚháizi.

有，他/她有女孩子？

Yes, he/she has girls.

Response drill

Give negative answers using **méiyou**.

1. **Zhāng xiānsheng yǒu jiějie ma?**

张先生有姐姐吗？

Does Mr. **Zhāng** have an older sister?

Méiyou, Zhāng xiānsheng méiyou jiějie.

没有，张先生没有姐姐。

No, Mr. **Zhāng** doesn't have an older sister.

2. **Wáng xiānsheng yǒu nǚháizi ma?**

王先生有女孩子吗？

Does Mr. **Wáng** have a daughter?

Méiyou, Wáng xiānsheng méiyou nǚháizi.

没有，王先生没有女孩子。

No, Mr. **Wáng** doesn't have a daughter.

3. **Lín xiānsheng yǒu mèimei ma?**

林先生有妹妹吗？

Does Mr. **Lín** have a younger sister?

Méiyou, Lín xiānsheng méiyou mèimei.

没有，林先生没有妹妹。

No, Mr. **Lín** doesn't have a younger sister.

4. **Tā tàitai yǒu gēge ma?**

他太太有哥哥吗？

Does his wife have an older brother?

Méiyou, Tā tàitai méiyou gēge.

没有，他太太没有哥哥。

No, his wife doesn't have an older brother.

5. **Huáng xiǎojiě yǒu dìdi ma?**

黄小姐有弟弟吗？

Does Miss **Huáng** have a younger brother?

Méiyou, Huáng xiǎojiě méiyou dìdì.

没有，黄小姐没有弟弟。

No, Miss Huáng doesn't have a younger brother.

6. Mǎ xiānsheng, Mǎ tàitai yǒu hái zi ma?

马先生，马太太有孩子吗？

Do Mr. Mǎ, Mrs. Mǎ have children?

Méiyou, Mǎ xiānsheng, Mǎ tàitai méiyou hái zi.

没有，马先生，马太太没有孩子。

No, Mr. Mǎ, Mrs. Mǎ don't have children.

7. Yáng tàitai yǒu nán hái zi ma?

杨太太有男孩子吗？

Does Mrs. Yáng have boys?

Méiyou, Yáng tàitai méiyou nán hái zi.

没有，杨太太没有男孩子。

No, Mrs. Yáng doesn't have boys.

Response drill

Give a negative or affirmative response to each question according to the cue.

1. Nǐ yǒu dìdi ma?

你有弟弟吗？

Do you have a younger brother?

Cue

yǒu

有

yes

Yǒu, wǒ yǒu dìdi.

有，我有弟弟。

Yes, I have a younger brother.

2. Nǐ yǒu dìdi ma?

你有弟弟吗？

Do you have an older brother?

Cue

méiyou

没有

no

Méiyou, wǒ méiyou dìdi.

没有，我没有弟弟。

No, I don't have an older brother.

3. Tā yǒu mèimei ma?

他/她有妹妹吗？

Does he/she have a younger sister?

Cue

méiyou

没有

no

Méiyou, tā méiyou mèimei.

没有，他/她没有妹妹。

No, he/she doesn't have a younger sister.

4. Wáng tóngzhì yǒu gēge ma?

王同志有哥哥吗？

Does Comrade Wáng have an older brother?

Cue yǒu
没有
yes

Yǒu, Wáng tóngzhì yǒu gēge.

有，王同志有哥哥。

Yes, Comrade Wáng has an older brother.

5. Tāmen yǒu hái zi ma?

他们有孩子吗？

Do you have children?

Cue yǒu
有
yes

Yǒu, tāmen yǒu hái zi.

有，他们有孩子。

Yes, we have children.

6. Guō tóngzhì yǒu Yīngguó péngyou ma?

郭同志有英国朋友吗？

Does Comrade Guō have an English friend?

Cue méiyǒu
没有
no

Méiyǒu, Guō tóngzhì méiyǒu Yīngguó péngyou.

没有，郭同志没有英国朋友。

No, Comrade Guō doesn't have an English friend.

7. Chén xiānsheng yǒu Fàguó péngyou ma?

陈先生有法国朋友吗？

Does Mr. Chén have a French friend?

Cue

yǒu

有

yes

Yǒu, Chén xiānsheng yǒu Fàguó péngyou.

有，陈先生有法国朋友。

Yes, Mr. Chén has a French friend.

Transformation drill

Change each **ma** question to a **jǐ** question.

1. Tāmen yǒu hái zi ma?

他们有孩子吗？

Do they have any children?

Tāmen yǒu jǐ ge hái zi?

他们有几个孩子？

How many children do they have?

2. Wáng xiānsheng yǒu jiějie ma?

王先生有姐姐吗？

Does Mr. Wáng have an older sister?

Wáng xiānsheng yǒu jǐ ge jiějie?

王先生有几个姐姐？

How many older sisters does have Mr Wáng?

3. Tāmen yǒu nán hái zi ma?

他们有男孩子吗？

Do they have any boys?

Tāmen yǒu jǐ ge nán hái zi?

他们有几个男孩子？

How many boys do they have?

4. Nǐmen yǒu nǚ hái zi ma?

你们有女孩子吗？

Do you have daughters?

Nǐmen yǒu jǐ ge nǚ hái zi?

你们有几个女孩子？

How many daughters do you have?

5. Fāng xiǎojiě yǒu gēge ma?

方小姐有哥哥吗？

Does Miss Fāng have an older brother?

Fāng xiǎojiě yǒu jǐge gēge?

方小姐有几个哥哥？

How many older brothers does Miss Fāng have?

6. Zhào tàitai yǒu dìdi ma?

赵太太有弟弟吗？

Does Mrs. Zhào have a younger brother?

Zhào tàitai yǒu jǐge dìdi?

赵太太有几个弟弟？

How many younger brothers does Mrs. Zhào have?

7. Tā yǒu Zhōngguo péngyou ma?

他/她有中国朋友吗？

Does he/she have a Chinese friend?

Tā yǒu jǐge Zhōngguo péngyou?

他/她有几个中国朋友？

How many Chinese friends does he/she have?

Response drill

Respond to the questions according to the cue.

1. Zhāng tóngzhì yǒu jǐge hái zi?
张同志有几个孩子？
How many children does Comrade Zhāng have?

Cue 2

Zhāng tóngzhì yǒu liǎngge hái zi.
张同志有两个孩子。
Comrade Zhāng has 2 children.

2. Zhào tóngzhì yǒu jǐge nǚ hái zi?
赵同志有几个女孩子？
How many daughters does Comrade Zhào have?

Cue 1

Zhào tóngzhì yǒu yíge nǚ hái zi.
赵同志有一个女孩子。
Comrade Zhào has 1 daughter.

3. Chén tóngzhì yǒu jǐge nán hái zi?
陈同志有几个男孩子？
How many boys does Comrade Chén have?

Cue 3

Chén tóngzhì yǒu sāngè nán hái zi.
陈同志有三个男孩子。
Comrade Chén has 3 boys.

4. Jiāng tóngzhì yǒu jǐge Měi guo péng you.
江同志有几个美国朋友？
How many American friends does Comrade Jiāng have?

Cue 5

Jiāng tóngzhì yǒu wǔge Měi guo péng you.

江同志有五个美国朋友。

Comrade Jiāng has 5 American friends.

5. Fāng tóngzhì yǒu jǐge mèimei?

方同志有几个妹妹？

How many younger sisters does Comrade Fāng have?

Cue 1

Fāng tóngzhì yǒu yíge mèimei.

方同志有一个妹妹。

Comrade Fāng has 1 younger sister.

6. Wáng xiānsheng yǒu jǐge Zhōngguo péngyou?

王先生有几个中国朋友？

How many Chinese friends does Mr. Wáng have?

Cue 2

Wáng xiānsheng yǒu liǎngge Zhōngguo péngyou.

王先生有两个中国朋友。

Mr. Wáng has 2 Chinese friends.

7. Tā yǒu jǐge gēge?

他/她有几个哥哥？

How many older brothers does he/she have?

Cue 3

Tā yǒu sānge gēge.

他/她有三个哥哥。

He/she has 3 older brothers.

Expansion drill

Add the cues to the questions.

1. Tā yǒu jǐge nánháizi?

他/她有几个男孩子？

How many sons does he/she have?

Cue

nǚháizi

女孩子

daughter

Tā yǒu jǐge nánháizi, jǐge nǚháizi?

他/她有几个男孩子，几个女孩子？

How many sons and how many daughters does he/she have?

2. Huáng xiānsheng yǒu jǐge Měiguó péngyou?

黄先生有几个美国朋友？

How many American friends does Mr. Huáng have?

Cue

Fàguo péngyou

法国朋友

French friend

Huáng xiānsheng yǒu jǐge Měiguó péngyou, jǐge Fàguo péngyou?

黄先生有几个美国朋友，几个法国朋友？

How many American friends and how many French friends does Mr. Huáng have?

3. Lǐ tàitai yǒu jǐge gēge?

李太太有几个哥哥？

How many older brothers does Mrs. Lǐ have?

Cue

dìdi

弟弟

younger brother

Lǐ tàitai yǒu jǐge gēge, jǐge dìdi?

李太太有几个哥哥，几个弟弟？

How many older brothers and how many younger brothers does Mrs. Lǐ have?

4. Sūn xiǎojiě yǒu jǐge jiějie?

孙小姐有几个姐姐？

How many older sisters does Miss Sūn have?

Cue

mèimei

妹妹

younger sister

Sūn xiǎojiě yǒu jǐge jiějie, jǐge mèimei?

孙小姐有几个姐姐，几个妹妹？

How many older sisters and how many younger sisters does Miss Sūn have?

5. Tāmen yǒu jǐge Yīngguo péngyou?

他们有几个英国朋友？

How many English friends do they have?

Cue

Déguo péngyou

德国朋友

German friend

Tāmen yǒu jǐge Yīngguo péngyou, jǐge Déguó péngyou?

他们有几个英国朋友，几个德国朋友？

How many English and German friends do they have?

6. Sòng xiānsheng yǒu jǐge nánháizi?

宋先生有几个男孩子？

How many sons does Mr. Sòng have?

Cue

nǚháizi

女孩子

daughter

Sòng xiānsheng yǒu jǐge nánháizi, jǐge nǚháizi?

宋先生有几个男孩子，几个女孩子？

How many sons and how many daughters does Mr. Sòng have?

7. Tā yǒu jǐge gēge?

他/她有几个哥哥？

How many older brothers does he/she have?

Cue

jiějie

姐姐

older sister

Tā yǒu jǐge gēge, jǐge jiějie?

他/她有几个哥哥，几个姐姐？

How many older brothers and how many older sisters does he/she have?

Response drill

Use 1) *jiù* + the number and 2) *méiyǒu* to answer each question.

1. *Tā yǒu jǐge nánháizi, jǐge nǚháizi?*

他/她有几个男孩子，几个女孩子？

How many sons and how many daughters does he/she have?

Cue 2

Tā jiù yǒu liǎngge nánháizi, méiyǒu nǚháizi.

他/她就有两个男孩子，没有女孩子。

2. *Lǐ xiānsheng yǒu jǐge gēge, jǐge jiějie?*

李先生有几个哥哥，几个姐姐？

How many older brothers and how many older sisters does Mr. *Lǐ* have?

Cue 1

Tā jiù yǒu yíge gēge, méiyǒu jiějie.

他就有一个哥哥，没有姐姐。

3. *Zhāng xiǎojiě yǒu jǐge jiějie, jǐge mèimei?*

张小姐有几个姐姐，几个妹妹？

How many older sisters and how many younger sisters does Miss *Zhāng* have?

Cue 2

Tā jiù yǒu liǎngge jiějie, méiyǒu mèimei.

她就有两个姐姐，没有妹妹。

4. *Zhōu tàitai yǒu jǐge gēge, jǐge dìdì?*

周太太有几个哥哥，几个弟弟？

How many older brothers and how many younger brothers does Mrs. *Zhōu* have?

Cue 1

Tā jiù yǒu yíge gēge, méiyǒu dìdì.

她就有一个哥哥，没有弟弟。

5. Hú xiānsheng yǒu jǐge dìdì, jǐge mèimei?

胡先生有几个弟弟，几个妹妹？

How many younger brothers and how many younger sisters does Mr. Hú have?

Cue 2

Tā jiù yǒu liǎngge dìdì, méiyǒu mèimei.

他就有两个弟弟，没有妹妹。

6. Tā yǒu jǐge Fàguo péngyou, jǐge Déguo péngyou?

他/她有几个法国朋友，几个德国朋友？

How many French friends and how many German friends does he/she have?

Cue 2

Tā jiù yǒu liǎngge Fàguo péngyou, méiyǒu Déguo péngyou.

他/她就有两个法国朋友，没有德国朋友。

7. Tāmen yǒu jǐge nánháizi, jǐge nǚháizi?

他们有几个男孩子，几个女孩子？

How many sons and how many daughters do they have?

Cue 1

Tāmen jiù yǒu yíge nánháizi, méiyǒu nǚháizi.

他们就有有一个男孩子，没有女孩子。

Response drill

Respond according to the cue.

1. Tā yǒu jǐge nánháizi, jǐge nǚháizi?

他/她有几个男孩子，几个女孩子？

How many sons and how many daughters does he/she have?

Cue 2, 3

Tā yǒu liǎngge nánháizi, sānge nǚháizi.

他/她有两个男孩子，三个女孩子。

He/she has 2 sons and 3 daughters.

2. Zhōu tóngzhì yǒu jǐge gēge, jǐge dìdì?

周同志有几个哥哥，几个弟弟？

How many older brothers and how many younger brothers does Comrade Zhōu have ?

Cue 1, 2

Zhōu tóngzhì yǒu yíge gēge, liǎngge dìdì.

周同志有一个哥哥，两个弟弟。

Comrade Zhōu has one older brother and two younger brothers.

3. Zhāng tóngzhì yǒu jǐge jiějie, jǐge mèimei?

张同志有几个姐姐，几个妹妹？

How many older sisters and how many younger sisters does Comrade Zhāng have.

Cue 3, 1

Zhāng tóngzhì yǒu sānge jiějie, yíge mèimei.

张同志有三个姐姐，一个妹妹。

Comrade Zhāng has 3 older sisters and one younger sister.

4. Tāmen yǒu jǐge Zhōngguó péngyou, jǐge Rìběn péngyou?

他们有几个中国朋友，几个日本朋友？

How many Chinese friends and how many Japanese friends do they have?

Cue 5, 1

Tāmen yǒu wǔge Zhōngguo péngyou, yíge Riběn péngyou.

他们有五个中国朋友，一个日本朋友。

They have 5 Chinese friends and one Japanese friend.

5. Chén tóngzhì yǒu jǐge Yīngguo péngyou, jǐge Déguo péngyou?

陈同志有几个英国朋友，几个德国朋友？

How many English friends and how many German friends does Comrade Chén have?

Cue 3, 2

Chén tóngzhì yǒu sānge Yīngguo péngyou, liǎngge Déguo péngyou.

陈同志有三个英国朋友，两个德国朋友。

Comrade Chén has 3 English friends and 3 German friends.

6. Liú tóngzhì yǒu jǐge nánháizi, jǐge nǚháizi?

刘同志有几个男孩子，几个女孩子？

How many sons and how many daughters does comrade Liú have?

Cue 2, 2

Liú tóngzhì yǒu liǎngge nánháizi, liǎngge nǚháizi.

刘同志有两个男孩子，两个女孩子。

Comrade Liú has 2 sons and 2 daughters.

7. Tā yǒu jǐge jiějie, jǐge gēge?

他/她有几个姐姐，几个哥哥？

How many older sisters and how many older brothers does he/she have?

Cue 1, 3

Tā yǒu yíge jiějie, sānge gēge.

他/她有一个姐姐，三个哥哥。

He/she has one older sister and 3 older brothers.

Response drill

The speaker will ask you 2 questions for each exchange. Use the number cue to answer the first question. Answer the second question with **Dōu** and the first alternative.

1. Qǐngwèn, tāmen yǒu jǐge hái'izi?
 请问，他们有几个孩子？
 May I ask, how many children do you have?

Cue 2
 2
 2

Tāmen yǒu liǎngge hái'izi.
 他们有两个孩子。
 They have 2 children.

2. Shi nánhái'izi, shi nǚhái'izi?
 是男孩子，是女孩子？
 Are they boys or girls?

Cue Dōu
 都
 all

Dōu shi nánhái'izi.
 都是男孩子。
 Both of them are boys.

3. Qǐngwèn, tā yǒu jǐge xiōngdì?
 请问，他/她有几个兄弟？
 May I ask, how many brothers does he/she have?

Cue 3
 3
 3

Tā yǒu sāngè xiōngdì.
 他/她有三个兄弟。

He/she has 3 brothers.

4. Shi gēge, shi dìdì?

是哥哥，是弟弟？

Are they older or younger brothers?

Cue Dōu
都
all

Dōu shi gēge.

都是哥哥。

All of them are older brothers.

5. Qǐngwèn, tā yǒu jǐge jiěmèi?

请问，他/她有几个姐妹？

May I ask, how many sisters does he/she have?

Cue 2
2
2

Tā yǒu liǎngge jiěmèi.

他/她有两个姐妹。

He/she has 2 sisters.

6. Shi jiějie, shi mèimei?

是姐姐，是妹妹？

Are they older or younger sisters?

Cue Dōu
都
all

都是姐姐。

Dōu shi jiějie.

Both of them are older sisters.

7. Qǐngwèn, tā yǒu jǐge Zhōngguo péngyou?

请问，他/她有几个中国朋友？

May I ask, how many Chinese friends does he/she have?

Cue 4
4
4

Tā yǒu sìge Zhōngguo péngyou.

他/她有四个中国朋友。

He/she has 4 Chinese friends.

8. Shì nán péngyou, shì nǚ péngyou?

是男朋友，是女朋友？

Are they male or female friends?

Cue Dōu
都
all

Dōu shì nán péngyou.

都是男朋友。

All of them are female friends.

9. Qǐng wèn, tā yǒu jǐ ge Měiguó péngyou?

请问，他/她有几个美国朋友？

May I ask, how many American friends does he/she have?

Cue 2
2
2

Tā yǒu liǎng ge Měiguó péngyou.

他/她有两个美国朋友。

He/she has 2 American friends.

10. Shì nán péngyou, shì nǚ péngyou?

是男朋友，是女朋友？

Are they male or female friends?

Cue Dōu
都
all

Dōu shì nán péngyou.

都是男朋友。

Both of them are male friends.

11. Qǐngwèn, tā yǒu jǐge hái zi?

请问，他/她有几个孩子？

May I ask, how many children does he/she have?

Cue 3
3
3

Tā yǒu sānge hái zi.

他/她有三个孩子。

He/she has 3 children.

12. Shì nán hái zi, shì nǚ hái zi?

是男孩子，是女孩子？

Are they boys or girls?

Cue Dōu
都
all

Dōu shì nán hái zi.

都是男孩子。

All of them are boys.

13. Qǐngwèn, tāmen yǒu jǐge hái zi?

请问，他们有几个孩子？

May I ask, how many children do they have?

Cue 5
5
5

5

Tāmen yǒu wǔge hái zi.

他们有五个孩子。

14. Shì nán hái zi, shì nǚ hái zi?

是男孩子，是女孩子？

Are they boys or girls?

Cue

Dōu

都

all

Dōu shì nánháizi.

都是男孩子。

All of them are boys.

Substitution drill

Substitute the cue.

1. Qǐngwèn, nǐmen jiāli yǒu shénme rén?

请问，你们家里有什么人？

May I ask, what people are (there) in your family?

Cue tāmen
他们
they

Qǐngwèn, tāmen jiāli yǒu shénme rén?

请问，他们家里有什么人？

May I ask, what people are (there) in their family?

2. Qǐngwèn, tāmen jiāli yǒu shénme rén?

请问，他们家里有什么人？

May I ask, what people are (there) in their family?

Cue Fāng xiānsheng
方先生
Mr. Fāng

Qǐngwèn, Fāng xiānsheng yǒu shénme rén?

请问，方先生有什么人？

May I ask, what people are (there) in Mr. Fāng's family?

3. Qǐngwèn, Fāng xiānsheng jiāli yǒu shénme rén?

请问，方先生家里有什么人？

May I ask, what people are (there) in Mr. Fāng's family?

Cue Zhāng xiǎojiě
张小姐
Mrs. Zhāng

Qǐngwèn, Zhāng xiǎojiě jiāli yǒu shénme rén?

请问，张小姐家里有什么人？

May I ask, what people are (there) in Miss Zhāng's family?

4. Qǐngwèn, Zhāng xiǎojiě jiāli yǒu shénme rén?
请问，张小姐家里有什么人？
May I ask, what people are (there) in Miss Zhāng's family?

Cue Lǐ Mínglǐ
李明理
Lǐ Mínglǐ

Qǐngwèn, Lǐ Mínglǐ jiāli yǒu shénme rén?
请问，李明理家里有什么人？
May I ask, what people are (there) in Lǐ Mínglǐ's family?

5. Qǐngwèn, Lǐ Mínglǐ jiāli yǒu shénme rén?
请问，李明理家里有什么人？
May I ask, what people are (there) in Lǐ Mínglǐ's family?

Cue nǐ gēge
你哥哥
your younger brother

Qǐngwèn, nǐ gēge jiāli yǒu shénme rén?
请问，你哥哥家里有什么人？
May I ask, what people are (there) in your older brother's family?

6. Qǐngwèn, nǐ gēge jiāli yǒu shénme rén?
请问，你哥哥家里有什么人？
May I ask, what people are (there) in your older brother's family?

Cue nǐ péngyou
你朋友
your friend

Qǐngwèn nǐ péngyou jiāli yǒu shénme rén?
请问，你朋友家里有什么人？
May I ask, what people are (there) in your friend's family?

7. Qǐngwèn, nǐ péngyou jiāli yǒu shénme rén?
请问，你朋友家里有什么人？
May I ask, what people are (there) in your friend's family?

Cue nǐ bàba

你爸爸
your father

Qǐngwèn, nǐ bàba jiāli yǒu shénme rén?

请问，你爸爸家里有什么人？

May I ask, what people are (there) in your father's family?

Expansion drill

Add the cue and **gēn** to each sentence.

1. Tā yǒu yíge háizi.
他/她有一个孩子。
He/she has one child.

Cue tàitai
太太
wife

Yǒu tā tàitai gēn yíge háizi.
有他/她太太跟一个孩子。
There are his wife and one child.

2. Hú xiānsheng yǒu yíge mèimei.
胡先生有一个妹妹。
Mr. Hú has one younger sister.

Cue mǔqīn
母亲
mother

Yǒu tā mǔqīn gēn yíge mèimei.
有他母亲跟一个妹妹。
There are his mother and one younger sister.

3. Lǐ xiǎojiě yǒu liǎngge dìdi.
李小姐有两个弟弟。
Miss Lǐ has 2 younger brothers.

Cue jiějie
姐姐
older sister

Yǒu tā jiějie gēn liǎngge dìdi.
有她姐姐跟两个弟弟。
There are her older sister and two younger brothers.

4. Liú xiānsheng yǒu yíge nǚhaizi.

刘先生有一个女孩子。

Mr. Liú has one daughter.

Cue mǔqīn
母亲
mother

Yǒu tā mǔqīn gēn yíge nǚháizi.

有他母亲跟一个女孩子。

There are his mother and one daughter.

5. Lín tàitai yǒu sānge nánháizi.

林太太有三个男孩子。

Mrs. Lín has 2 boys.

Cue xiānsheng
先生
Mister

Yǒu tā xiānsheng gēn sānge nánháizi.

有她先生跟三个男孩子。

There are her husband and 3 boys.

6. Tā yǒu yíge jiějie.

他/她有一个姐姐。

He has one older sister.

Cue fùqīn
父亲
father

Yǒu tā fùqīn gēn yíge jiějie.

有他/她父亲跟一个姐姐。

There are his/her older sister and his/her father.

7. Wáng xiānsheng yǒu sìge háizi.

王先生有四个孩子。

Mr. Wáng has 4 children.

Cue tàitai

太太
wife

Yǒu tā tàitai gēn sìge háizi.

有他太太跟四个孩子。

There are his wife and 4 children.

Response drill

Answer to the question according to the cue.

1. Tāmen háizi dōu zài zhèlǐ ma?

他们孩子都在这里吗？

Are all of their children here?

Cue

Měiguó

美国

America

Bù, yíge zhèlǐ, yíge hái zài Měiguó.

不，一个在这里，一个还在美国。

No, one is here, and one is still in America.

2. Tā gēge, jiějie dōu zài zhèlǐ ma?

他/她哥哥，姐姐都在这里吗？

Are his/her older brother and older sister both here?

Cue

Jiāzhōu

加州

California

Bù, yíge zài zhèlǐ, yíge hái zài Jiāzhōu.

不，一个在这里，一个还在加州。

No, one is here, and one is still in California.

3. Tā měiguó péngyou dōu zài zhèlǐ ma?

他/她美国朋友都在这里吗？

Are his/her American friends all here?

Cue

Táizhōng

台中

T'ai-chung

Bù, yíge zài zhèlǐ, yíge hái zài Táizhōng.

不，一个在这里，一个还在台中。

No, one is here, and one is still in T'ai-chung.

4. Tā dìdì , mèimei dōu zài Zhōngguo ma?
他/她弟弟，妹妹都在中国吗？
Are his/her younger brother and younger sister both here?

Cue Dézhōu
德州
Texas

Bù, yíge zài Zhōngguo, yíge hái zài Dézhōu.
不，一个在中国，一个还在德州。
No, one is in China, one is still in Texas.

5. Wáng xiānsheng de hái zi dōu zài Dézhōu ma?
王先生的孩子都在德州吗？
Are Mr. Wáng's children all here?

Cue Jiāzhōu
加州
California

Bù, yíge zài Dézhōu, yíge hái zài Jiāzhōu.
不，一个在德州，一个还在加州。
No, one is in Texas, and one is still in California.

6. Nèi liǎngwèi xiānsheng dōu zài Shànghǎi ma?
那两位先生都在上海吗？
Are both those gentlemen in Shànghǎi?

Cue Qīngdǎo
青岛
Qīngdǎo

Bù, yíge zài Shànghǎi, yíge hái zài Qīngdǎo.
不，一个在上海，一个还在青岛。
No, one is in Shànghǎi, one is in Qīngdǎo.

7. Tāmen hái zi dōu zài Xiānggǎng ma?
他们孩子都在香港吗？
Are their children all in Hong Kong?

Cue Měiguó

美国

America

Bù, yíge zài Xiāngǎng, yíge hái zài Měiguó.

不，一个在香港，一个还在美国。

No, one is in Hong Kong, one is still in America.

Unit 4

Introduction

Topics covered in this unit

1. Arrival and departure times.
2. The marker [le](#)
3. The [shì ... de](#) construction.

Material you will need

1. The C-1 and P-1 tapes, the Reference List and Reference Notes.
2. The C-2 and P-2 tapes, the Workbook.
3. The 4D-1 tape.

References

Reference List

in Běijīng

1. A: Nǐ àiren lái ma?
你爱人来吗?
Is your wife coming?
B: Tā lái.
她来。
She is coming.
2. A: Nǐ àiren lái le ma?
你爱人来了吗?
Has your wife come?
B: Lái le, tā lái le.
来了, 她来了。
Yes, she has come.
3. A: Nǐ àiren yě lái le ma?
你爱人也来了吗?
Has your wife come too?
B: Tā hái méi lái.
她还没来。
She hasn't come yet.
4. A: Tā shénme shíhou lái?
她什么时候来?
When is she coming?
B: Tā míngtiān lái.
她明天来。
She is coming tomorrow.
5. A: Nǐ péngyou shénme shíhou dào?
你朋友什么时候到?
When is your friend arriving?
B: Tā yǐjīng dào le.
他已经到了。
He has already arrived.
6. A: Tā shì shénme shíhou dào de?
她是什么时候到的?
When did she arrive?

7. B: Tā shì zuótiān dào de.
她是昨天到的。
She arrived Yesterday.
- A: Nǐ shì yíge rén lái de ma?
你是一个人来的吗吗?
Did you come alone?
- B: Bú shì, wǒ bú shì yíge rén lái de.
不是, 我不是一个人来的。
No, I didn't come alone.
8. A: Nǐ shénme shíhou zǒu?
你什么时候走?
When are you leaving?
- B: Wǒ jīntiān zǒu.
我今天走。
I'm leaving today.
9. A: Nǐ nǎitiān zǒu?
你哪天走?
What day are you leaving?
- B: Wǒ jīntiān zǒu.
我今天走。
I'm leaving today.

Vocabulary

dào	到	to arrive
érzi	儿子	son
érzi	二字	son
hòutiān (hòutian)	后天	the day after tomorrow
jīntiān (jīntian)	今天	today
lái	来	to come
le	了	combined le: new-situation and completion marker
míngtiān (míngtian)	明天	tomorrow
něitiān	哪天	what day
nǚér	女儿	daughter
qiántiān (qiántian)	前天	the day before Yesterday
shénme shíhou	什么时候	when
shì de	是的	emphatic agreement
-tiān	天	day
tiāntiān	天天	every day
yíge rén	一个人	singly, alone
yǐjīng (yǐjing)	已经	already
zǒu	走	to leave
zuótiān	昨天	Yesterday
jiéhūn	结婚	to get married, to be married
méi jiéhūn	没结婚	not to be married
kěshi	可是	but
xiǎng	想	to think, to think that

Reference Notes

Notes on №1

- | | | | |
|----|---------------------|------------|----------------------|
| 1. | A: Nǐ àiren lái ma? | 你爱人来
吗? | Is your wife coming? |
| | B: Tā lái. | 她来。 | She is coming. |

These sentences refer to future time, but *lái* is not a future-tense form. Strictly speaking, Chinese verbs do not have tenses. The same form of the verb can be used in present, past, and future contexts.

We translated the sentence *Tā zài Tàinán gōngzuò.* as “He works in Tainan” assuming a present context. But in a past context we could translate it as “He worked in Tainan; and in a future context we could translate it as “He will work in Tainan.” The verb form *gōngzuò* does not tell you what time is being talked about. You have to look elsewhere for that information, perhaps to a time expression like “last year” or “now” or “tomorrow,” or to the conversational setting.

Notes on №2

2.	A: Nǐ àiren lái le ma?	你爱人来了吗？	Has your wife come?
	B: Lái le, tā lái le.	来了，她来了。	Yes, she has come.

Aspect: **Le** is an aspect marker. Through the use of and other one-syllable markers (**de, zhe, ne, guo**), the Chinese language indicates whether the occurrence being talked about is completed, ongoing, about to occur, or experienced for the first time. Aspect markers may also be used to indicate whether the whole situation in the sentence is a new, changed situation.

“Completion” and “new situation” are not tenses but aspects. Aspect is a way of talking about events or activities in relation to time. While tenses categorize action in terms of features such as completeness and change. Aspect markers are very different from tense markers because the same aspect may be used in past, present, and future contexts. We may speak of an action that will be completed as of a future time, for example, or of a situation that was new as of a past time. English communicates these ideas to a certain extent through the use of many different tenses for the verb (future perfect, simple past, etc.). Chinese does this through the use of aspect markers and time words. The verbs themselves do not change form.

Le is used in exchange 2 to indicate two aspects—completion and new situation, (it is, however, often used to indicate only one aspect.)

Here, it indicates that the person has come, meaning that the action is completed, and that the person is now here, a changed situation. When the marker **le** refers to both these aspects, we call it “combined **le**.” Combined **le** can be thought of as a telescoping of the completion **le** followed by a new-situation **le**: **le le** becomes **le**. In the next two units, you will see the marker **le** used to indicate each of these aspects separately.

Notes on №3

3. A: **Nǐ àiren yě lái le ma?** 你爱人也来了吗? Has your wife come too?
 B: **Tā hái méi lái.** 她还没来。 She hasn't come yet.

Negative of combined **le**: Compare these affirmative and negative forms:

affirmative			lái		is coming.
			来		
negative		bù	lái		isn't coming.
		不	来		

affirmative			lái	le	has come (now).
			来	了	
negative	hái	méi(you)	lái		hasn't come (yet).
	还	没(有)	来		

Notice that the marker **le** does not appear in the negative answer in the exchange.

Hái: The negative of a sentence containing combined **le** will include the adverb **hái**, “yet,” as well as the negative **méi(you)**. In English, the “yet” is frequently left out.

Like other adverbs such as **yě**, **hái** always precedes the verb, although not always directly. Elements such as the negatives **bù** and **méi** may come between an adverb and a verb.

Méiyóu, “not have” is used to negate the aspect of completion; that is, to say that a certain event did not take place. **Méiyóu** may be shortened to **méi**. Here are three possible negative answers to the question. **Tā lái le ma?** “Has he come?”

Tā	hái	méiyóu	lái.	He hasn't come yet.
他	还	没有	来。	
Tā	hái	méi	lái.	He hasn't come yet.
他	还	没	来。	
	hái	méiyóu.		Not yet.
	还	没有。		

Notes on №4-5

4.	A: Tā shénme shíhou lái?	她什么时候来？	When is she coming?
	B: Tā míngtiān lái.	她明天来。	She is coming tomorrow.
5.	A: Nǐ péngyou shénme shíhou dào?	你朋友什么时候到？	When is your friend arriving?
	B: Tā yǐjīng dào le.	他已经到了。	He has already arrived.

Position of time words: Time phrases occupy the same position in a sentence as adverbs such as **yě** and **hái** between the subject and the verb.

Notes on №6-7

- | | | | |
|----|---------------------------------------|--------------|--------------------------|
| 6. | A: Tā shì shénme shíhòu dào de? | 她是什么时候到的？ | When did she arrive? |
| | B: Tā shì zuótiān dào de. | 她是昨天到的。 | She arrived Yesterday. |
| 7. | A: Nǐ shì yíge rén lái de ma? | 你是一个人来的吗？ | Did you come alone? |
| | B: Bú shì, wǒ bú shì yíge rén lái de. | 不是，我不是一个人来的。 | No, I didn't come alone. |

(shi)...de:⁵ This is another way to indicate the aspect of completion. The aspect marker **le** and the pattern (shi...de) perform different functions and convey different meanings. This is how they are different:

The aspect marker **le** or its negative **méi (you)** is used when the center of interest is whether or not an action took place. For example, if you do not know whether Mr. Sun came or not, you would ask:

Tā lái le méiyou?	Did he come?
他来了没有？	

and you would be answered either

Tā lái le.	He came.
他来了。	

or

Tā méi lái.	He didn't come.
他没来。	

In this question and answer, you use **le** or its negative **méi(you)** because the focus is on whether the action took place or not.

The purpose of the (shi)...de construction, on the other hand, is to focus on additional information about a completed action; that is, the construction is used when the center of interest is NOT whether or not a certain action took place.

For example, once it has been established that Mr. Sun did in fact come, the (shi)...de construction will probably be used for any additional questions and answers about his coming. For example:

Tā shì shénme shíhòu lái de?	When did he come?
他是什么时候来的？	

⁵On occasion, a speaker may omit the **shì** (which is why it is written in parentheses in these notes).

Tā shì zuótiān lái de.	He came yesterday.
他是昨天来的。	
Tā shì yíge rén lái de ma?	Did he come alone?
他是一个人来的吗？	
Tā shì yíge rén lái de.	He came alone.
他是一个人来的。	

These questions and answers use the (shi)...de construction because you already know that Mr. Sun came and now you are asking for additional information about his visit. Many types of additional information can be focus points for which the (shi)...de construction is used.

In Tā shì shénme shíhòu lái de? the additional information is the time when something happens.

In Tā shì yíge rén lái de ma? the information asked for is the manner in which something takes place.

Other possible focus points are place, cause of action, goal of action, and performer of action.

Now let's take a look at how shì and de function separately in this construction. The verb shì, coming before the phrase which is the center of interest, serves as a signal that what follows is emphasized. The verb "to be" is often used in a similar way in English to mark the center of interest:

Tā shì zuótiān lái de ma?	Was it yesterday that he came?
他是昨天来的吗？	

Another way of showing the center of interest in English is by word stress. Here is a comparison between focusing in Chinese with (shi)...de and focusing in English with stress:

Tā lái le ma?	Has he come?
他来了吗？	
Lái le.	Yes, he has.
来了。	
Tā shì zuótiān lái de ma?	Did he come YESTERDAY?
他是昨天来的吗？	
Shì, tā shì zuótiān lái de.	Yes, YESTERDAY.
是，他是昨天来的。	

The marker de coming after the verb indicates completion. When the marker de is not used in the sentence, that sentence no longer describes a completed event. The marker shì by itself emphasizes something about the action.

Compare these sentences:

Tā shì jīntiān lái.	She is coming (later) today.
他是今天来。	

Tā shì jīntiān lái de.	She came (earlier) today.
他是今天来的。	

For the time being, you will not use **shì** without **de**.

The negative form of the (shi)...de construction is **bú shì...de**. Compare this with the negatives you have already learned:

Tā		shì	zuótiān		lái	-de	It was YESTERDAY that he came.
他		是	昨天		来	的。	
Tā	bú		zuótiān		lái	-de	It wasn't YESTERDAY that he came.
他	不		昨天		来	的。	

Tā					lái	le.	He has come.
他					来	了。	
Tā			hái	méi	lái.		He hasn't come.
他			还	没	来。		

Tā			míngtiān		lái.		He is coming tomorrow.
他			明天		来。		
Tā			míngtiān	bù	lái.		He isn't coming tomorrow.
他			明天	不	来。		

Notice that in a (shi)...de construction the negative **bú** precedes the verb **shì** rather than the main verb. Short answers are also formed with **shì** rather than with the main verb:

Nǐ shì yíge rén lái de ma?	Did you come alone?
你是一个人来的吗？	
Shì, wǒ shì yíge rén lái de.	Yes, I came alone.
是，我是一个人来的。	
Búshì, wǒ bú shì yíge rén lái de.	No, I didn't come alone.
不是，我不是一个人来的。	

The (shi)...de construction is not used in every completed-action sentence containing a time, place, or manner phrase. If the center of interest is still whether or not the action took place, **le** is used. If, for example, you knew that someone was expected to come yesterday and you wanted to find out only whether he actually did come, the conversation might go as follows:

A:	Tā zuótiān méi lái ma?	Didn't he COME yesterday?
	他昨天没来吗？	
B:	Tā zuótiān lái le.	He DID COME yesterday.
	他做太年来了。	

Literally, **yíge rén** means "one person." When the expression is used to describe how someone does something, translate it as "alone"

Notes on №8-9

8.	A: Nǐ shénme shíhou zǒu?	你什么时候走？	When are you leaving?
	B: Wǒ jīntiān zǒu.	我今天走。	I'm leaving today.
9.	A: Nǐ nǎitiān zǒu?	你哪天走？	What day are you leaving?
	B: Wǒ jīntiān zǒu.	我今天走。	I'm leaving today.

The word for “day” is the bound word **-tiān**. To ask “what day” (literally “which day”), the bound word **něi-** “which,” is combined with the bound word **-tiān**, “day”: **něitiān** (like **něiguó**, “which country”).

něitiān?	what day?/which day?
那天	
qiántiān	day before yesterday
前田	
zuótiān	yesterday
昨天	
jīntiān	today
今天	
míngtiān	tomorrow
明天	
hòutiān	day after tomorrow
后天	

Some speakers say the **-tiān** in these words in the Neutral tone: **qiántian**, **zuótian**, **jīntian**, **míngtian**, **hòutian**.

Drills

Transformation drill

Transform the question according to the model.

1. Nǐ àiren lái ma?

你爱人来吗？

Is your spouse coming?

Nǐ àiren lái le ma?

你爱人来了吗？

Has your spouse come?

2. Nǐ fùmǔ zǒu ma?

你父母走吗？

Are your parents coming?

Nǐ fùmǔ zǒu le ma?

你父母走了吗？

Have your parents come?

3. Nǐ péngyou zǒu ma?

你朋友走吗？

Is your friend coming?

Nǐ péngyǒu zǒu le ma?

你朋友走了吗？

Has your friend come?

4. Nǐ gēge zǒu ma?

你哥哥走吗？

Is your older brother coming?

Nǐ gēge zǒu le ma?

你哥哥走了吗？

Has your older brother come?

5. Nǐ jiějie lái ma?

你姐姐来吗？

Is your older sister coming?

Nǐ jiějie lái le ma?

你姐姐来了吗？

Has your older sister come?

6. Nǐ mèimei lái ma?

你妹妹来吗？

Is your younger sister coming?

Nǐ mèimei lái le ma?

你妹妹来了吗？

Has your younger sister come?

7. Nǐ dìdi zǒu ma?

你弟弟走吗？

Is your younger brother coming?

Nǐ dìdi zǒu le ma?

你弟弟走了吗？

Has your younger brother come?

Transformation drill

Transform the question according to the model.

1. Tā lái le ma?

他/她来了吗？

Has he/she come?

Tā yǐjīng lái le ma?

他/她已经来了吗？

Has he/she already come?

2. Máo tóngzhì dào le ma?

毛同志到了吗？

Has Comrade Máo arrived?

Máo tóngzhì yǐjīng dào le ma?

毛同志已经到了吗？

Has comrade Máo already arrived?

3. Lǐ tóngzhì zǒu le ma?

李同志走了吗？

Has Comrade Lǐ left?

Lǐ tóngzhì yǐjīng zǒu le ma?

李同志已经走了吗？

Has comrade Lǐ already left?

4. Mǎ tóngzhì zǒu le ma?

马同志走了吗？

Has Comrade Mǎ left?

Mǎ tóngzhì yǐjīng zǒu le ma?

马同志已经走了吗？

Has comrade Mǎ already left?

5. Zhāng tóngzhì lái le ma?

张同志来了吗？

Has Comrade Zhāng come?

Zhāng tóngzhì yǐjīng lái le ma?

张同志已经来了吗？

Has comrade Zhāng already come?

6. Huáng tóngzhì dào le ma?

黄同志到了吗？

Has Comrade Huáng arrived?

Huáng tóngzhì yǐjīng dào le ma?

黄同志已经到了吗？

Has comrade Huáng already arrived?

7. Sūn tóngzhì zǒu le ma?

孙同志走了吗？

Has Comrade Sūn left?

Sūn tóngzhì yǐjīng zǒu le ma?

孙同志已经走了吗？

Has comrade Sūn already left?

Response drill

Answer to the question according to the model.

1. Tā lái le ma?

他/她来了吗？

Has he/she come?

Tā hái méi lái.

他/她还没来。

He/she hasn't come yet.

2. Wáng tóngzhì zǒu le ma?

王同志走了吗？

Has Comrade Wáng left?

Tā hái méi zǒu.

他/她还没来。

He/she hasn't left yet.

3. Lǐ tóngzhì dào le ma?

李同志到了吗？

Has Comrade Lǐ arrive yet?

Tā hái méi dào.

他/她还没来。

He/she hasn't arrive yet.

4. Hé tóngzhì lái le ma?

何同志来了吗。

Has Comrade Hé come?

Tā hái méi lái.

他/她还没来。

He/she hasn't come yet.

5. Zhào tóngzhì lái le ma?

赵同志来了吗？？

Has Comrade Zhào come?

Tā hái méi lái.

他/她还没来。

He/she hasn't come yet.

6. Liú tóngzhì zǒu le ma?

刘同志走了吗？

Has Comrade Liú left?

Tā hái méi zǒu.

他/她还没来。

He/she hasn't left yet.

7. Sūn tóngzhì lái le ma?

孙同志来了吗？

Has Comrade Sūn come?

Tā hái méi lái.

他/她还没来。

He/she hasn't come yet.

Response drill

Answer to the question according to the model.

1. Tā zǒu le ma?

他/她走了吗？

Has he/she left?

Zǒu le, tā yǐjīng zǒu le.

走了，他/她已经走了。

Yes, he/she has already left.

2. Tā àiren ne?

他/她爱人呢？

And his/her spouse?

Tā àiren yě yǐjīng zǒu le.

他/她爱人也已经走了。

His/her spouse has already left too.

3. Tā lái le ma?

他/她来了吗？

Has he/she come?

Lái le, tā yǐjīng lái le.

来了，他/她。

Yes, he/she has already come.

4. Tā àiren ne?

他/她爱人呢？

And his/her spouse?

Tā àiren yě yǐjīng lái le.

他/她爱人也已经来了。

His/her spouse has already come too.

5. Tā dào le ma?

他/她到了吗？

Has he/she arrived?

Dào le, tā yǐjīng dào le.

到了，他/她已经到了

Yes, he/she has already arrived.

6. Tā àiren ne?

他/她爱人呢？

And his/her spouse?

Tā àiren yě yǐjīng dào le.

他/她爱人也已经到了。

His/her spouse has already arrived too.

7. Lǐ tóngzhì zǒu le ma?

李同志走了走吗？

Has Comrade Lǐ left?

Zǒu le, tā yǐjīng zǒu le.

走了，他已经走了。

Yes, he has already left.

8. Tā gēge ne?

他/她哥哥呢？

And his older brother?

Tā gēge yě yǐjīng zǒu le.

他/她哥哥也已经走了。

His older brother has already left too.

9. Wáng tóngzhì lái le ma?

王同志来了吗？

Has Comrade Wáng come?

Lái le, tā yǐjīng lái le.

来了，他已经来了。

Yes, he has already come.

10. Tā àiren ne?

他爱人呢？

And his spouse?

Tā àiren yě yǐjīng lái le.

他爱人也已经来了。

His spouse has already come too.

11. Zhào xiānsheng dào le ma?

赵先生到了吗？

Has Mr. Zhào arrived?

Dào le, tā yǐjīng dào le.

到了，他已经到了。

Yes, he has already arrived.

12. Tā dìdi ne?

他弟弟呢？

And his younger brother.

Tā dìdi yě yǐjīng dào le.

他弟弟也已经到了。

His younger brother has already arrived too.

13. Zhāng tóngzhì zǒu le ma?

张同志走了吗？

Has Comrade Zhāng left?

Zǒu le, tā yǐjīng zǒu le.

走了，他已经走了。

Yes, he has already left.

14. Chén tóngzhì ne?

陈同志呢？

And Comrade Chén?

Chén tóngzhì yě yǐjīng zǒu le.

陈同也已经走了。

Comrade Chén has already left too.

Response drill

Answer to the question according to the model.

1. Tā lái le ma?

他/她来了吗？

Has he/she come?

Tā hái méi lái.

他/她还没来。

He/she hasn't come yet.

2. Tā àiren ne?

他/她爱人呢？

And his/her spouse?

Tā àiren yě hái méi lái.

他/她爱人也还没来。

His/her spouse hasn't come yet either.

3. Tā zǒu le ma?

他/她走了吗？

Has he/she left?

Tā hái méi zǒu.

他/她还没走。

He/she hasn't left yet.

4. Tā àiren ne?

他/她爱人呢？

And his/her spouse?

Tā àiren yě hái méi zǒu.

他/她爱人也还没走。

His/her spouse hasn't left yet either.

5. Tā dào le ma?

他/她到了吗？

Has he/she arrived?

Tā hái méi dào.

他/她还没到。

He/she hasn't arrived yet.

6. Tā àiren ne?

他/她爱人呢？

And his/her spouse?

Tā àiren yě hái méi dào.

他/她爱人也还没到。

His/her spouse hasn't arrived yet either.

7. Fāng nǚshì lái le ma?

方女士来了吗？

Has Ms. Fāng come?

Fāng nǚshì hái méi lái.

方女士还没来。

Ms. Fāng hasn't come yet.

8. Tā dìdi ne?

她弟弟呢？

And her younger brother?

Tā dìdi yě hái méi lái.

她弟弟也还没来。

Her younger brother hasn't come yet either.

9. Lǐ xiānsheng dào le ma?

李先生到了吗？

Has Mr. Lǐ arrived?

Lǐ xiānsheng hái méi dào.

李先生还没到。

Mr. Lǐ hasn't arrived yet.

10. Tā fùmǔ ne?

他父母呢？

And his parents?

Tā fùmǔ yě hái méi dào.

她父母也还没到。

His parents haven't come yet either.

11. Chén tóngzhì zǒu le ma?

陈同志走了吗？

Has comrade Chén left?

Chén tóngzhì hái méi zǒu.

陈同志还没走。

Comrade Chén hasn't left yet?

12. Jiāng tóngzhì ne?

江同志呢？

And comrade Jiāng?

Jiāng tóngzhì yě hái méi zǒu.

江同志也还没走。

Comrade Jiāng hasn't left yet either.

13. Tā mǔqīn dào le ma?

他/她亲到了吗？

Has his/her mother arrived?

Tā mǔqīn hái méi dào.

他/她母亲还没到。

His/her mother hasn't arrived yet.

14. Tā jiějie ne?

他/她姐姐呢？

And his/her older sister?

Tā jiějie yě hái méi dào.

他/她姐姐也还没到。

His/her older sister hasn't arrived yet either.

Response drill

Give an affirmative response to the first question in each exchange, and include **hái** and **méi** in your response to the second question.

1. Tā zǒu le ma?

他/她走了吗？

Has he/she left?

Tā yǐjīng zǒu le.

他/她已经走了。

He/she has already left.

2. Tā àiren ne?

他/她爱人呢？

And his/her spouse?

Tā àiren hái méi zǒu.

他/她爱人还没走。

His/her spouse hasn't left yet.

3. Tā lái le ma?

他/她来了吗？

Has he/she come?

Tā yǐjīng lái le.

他/她已经来了。

He/she has already come.

4. Tā àiren ne?

他/她爱人呢？

And his/her spouse?

Tā àiren hái méi lái.

他/她爱人还没来。

His/her spouse hasn't come yet.

5. Tā dào le ma?

他/她到了吗？

Has he/she arrived?

Tā yǐjīng dào le.

他/她已经到了。

He/she has already arrived.

6. Tā àiren ne?

他/她爱人呢？

And his/her spouse?

Tā àiren hái méi dào.

他/她爱人还没到。

His/her spouse hasn't arrived yet.

7. Wáng xiānsheng zǒu le ma?

王先生走了吗？

Has Mr. Wáng left?

Wáng xiānsheng yǐjīng zǒu le.

王先生已经走了。

Mr. Wáng has already left.

8. Tā mǔqīn ne?

他母亲呢？

And his mother?

Tā mǔqīn hái méi zǒu.

他母亲还没走。

His mother hasn't left yet.

9. Qián tóngzhì lái le ma?

钱同志来了吗？

Has Comrade Qián come?

Qián tóngzhì yǐjīng lái le.

钱同志已经来了了。

Comrade Qián has already come.

10. Jiāng tóngzhì ne?

江同志呢？

And Comrade Jiāng?

Jiāng tóngzhì hái méi lái.

江同志还没来。

Comrade Jiāng hasn't come yet.

11. Máo nǚshì dào le ma?

毛女士到了吗？

Has Mrs. Máo arrived?

Máo nǚshì yǐjīng dào le.

毛女士已经到了。

Mrs. Máo has already arrived.

12. Tā mèimei ne?

她妹妹呢？

And her younger sister?

Tā mèimei hái méi dào.

他妹妹还没到。

Her younger sister hasn't arrived yet.

13. Zēng fūren zǒu le ma?

曾夫人走了吗？

Has Mrs. Zēng left?

Zēng fūren yǐjīng zǒu le.

曾夫人已经走了。

Mrs. Zēng has already left.

14. Tā mǔqīn ne?

他母亲呢？

And his mother?

Tā mǔqīn hái méi zǒu.

他母亲还没走。

His mother hasn't left yet.

Response drill

Respond to the question according to the model.

1. Tā lái le ma?
他/她来了吗?
Has he/she come?

Tā hái méi lái.
他/她还没来。
He/she hasn't come yet.

2. Tā ài ren ne?
他/她爱人呢?
And is/her spouse?

Tā ài ren yǐ jīng lái le.
他/她爱人已经来了。
His/her spouse has already come.

3. Tā zǒu le ma?
他/她走了吗?
Has he/she left?

Tā hái méi zǒu.
他/她还没走。
He/she hasn't left yet.

4. Tā ài ren ne?
他/她爱人呢?
And his/her spouse?

Tā ài ren yǐ jīng zǒu le.
他/她爱人已经走了。
His/her spouse has already left.

5. Tā dào le ma?
他/她到了吗?
Has he/she arrived?

Tā hái méi dào.

他/她还没到。

He/she hasn't arrived yet.

6. Tā àiren ne?

他/她爱人呢？

And his/her spouse?

Tā àiren yǐjīng dào le.

他/她爱人已经到了。

His/her spouse has already arrived.

7. Cāo tóngzhì lái le ma?

曹同志来了吗？

Has Comrade Cāo come?

Cāo tóngzhì hái méi lái.

曹同志还没来。

Comrade Cāo hasn't come yet.

8. Sūn tóngzhì ne?

孙同志呢？

And Comrade Sūn?

Sūn tóngzhì yǐjīng lái le.

孙同志已经来了。

Comrade Sūn has already come.

9. Zhāng xiānsheng lái le ma?

张先生来了吗？

Has Mr. Zhāng come?

Zhāng xiānsheng hái méi lái.

张先生还没来。

Mr. Zhāng hasn't come yet.

10. Tā dìdi ne?

他弟弟呢？

And his younger brother?

Tā dìdi yǐjīng lái le.

他弟弟已经来了。

His younger brother has already come.

11. Tā mǔqīn dào le ma?

他/她母亲到了吗？

Has his/her mother arrived?

Tā mǔqīn hái méi dào.

他/她母亲还没到。

His/her mother hasn't arrived yet.

12. Tā mèimei ne?

他/她妹妹呢？

And his/her younger sister?

Tā mèimei yǐjīng dào le.

他/她妹妹已经到了。

His/her younger sister has already arrived.

13. Wáng nǚshì zǒu le ma?

王女士走了吗？

Has Mrs. Wáng left.

Wáng nǚshì hái méi zǒu.

王女士还没走。

Mrs. Wáng hasn't left yet.

14. Zhāng nǚshì ne?

张女士呢？

And Mrs. Zhāng?

Zhāng nǚshì yǐjīng zǒu le.

张女士已经走了。

Mrs. Zhāng has already left.

Response drill

Respond to each question with a completed-action answer or a yet-to-be-completed answer, depending on the cue.

1. Tā zǒu le ma?
他/她走了吗?
Has he/she left?

Cue zuótiān
昨天
yesterday

Tā yǐjīng zǒu le.
他/她已经走了。
He/she has already left.

2. Tā àiren ne?
他/她呢?
And his/her spouse?

Cue zuótiān
昨天
yesterday

Tā àiren yě yǐjīng zǒu le
他/她爱人也已经走了。
His/her spouse has already left too.

3. Tā lái le ma?
他/她来了吗?
Has he/she come?

Cue míngtiān
明天
tomorrow

Tā hái méi lái.
他/她还没来。
He/she hasn't come yet.

王同志也已经到了。

Comrade Wáng has already arrived too.

11. Tā fùmǔ zǒu le ma?

他/她父母走了吗？

Have his/her parents left?

Cue

míngtiān

明天

tomorrow

Tā fùmǔ hái méi zǒu.

他/她父母还没走。

His/her parents hasn't left yet.

12. Tāmen háizi ne?

他们孩子呢？

And their children?

Cue

zuótiān

昨天

yesterday

Tāmen háizi yǐjīng zǒu le.

他们孩子已经走了。

Their children have already left.

13. Tā àiren lái le ma?

他/她爱人来了呢？

Has his/her spouse come?

Cue

zuótiān

昨天

yesterday

Tā àiren yǐjīng lái le.

他/她爱人已经来了。

His/her spouse has already come.

14. Tāmen háizi ne?

他们孩子呢？

And his children?

Cue

míngtiān

明天

tomorrow

Tāmen háizi hái méi lái.

他们孩子还没来。

His children haven't come yet.

Response drill

Respond according to the clue.

1. Tā shénme shíhou lái?
他/她什么时候来?
When is he/she coming?

Cue míngtiān
明天
tomorrow

Tā míngtiān lái.
他/她明天来。
He/she is coming tomorrow.

2. Lǐ xiānsheng shénme shíhou zǒu?
李先生什么时候走?
When is Mr. Lǐ leaving?

Cue jīntiān
今天
today

Tā jīntiān zǒu.
他今天走。
He is leaving today.

3. Hú xiǎojiě shénme shíhou dào?
胡小姐什么时候到?
When is Miss Hú arriving?

Cue míngtiān
明天
tomorrow

Tā míngtiān dào.
她明天到。
She is arriving tomorrow

4. Zhāng xiānsheng shénme shíhou lái?

张个什么时候来？

When is Mr. Zhāng coming?

Cue hòutiān

后天

the day after tomorrow

Tā hòutiān lái.

他后天来。

He is coming the day after tomorrow.

5. Wáng xiǎojiě shénme shíhou dào?

王小姐什么时候到？

When is Miss Wáng arriving?

Cue jīntiān

今天

today

Tā jīntiān dào.

她今天到。

She is arriving today.

6. Tā shénme shíhou zǒu?

他/她什么时候走？

When is he/she leaving?

Cue hòutiān

后天

the day after tomorrow

Tā hòutiān zǒu.

他/她后天走。

He/she is leaving the day after tomorrow.

Transformation drill

For each item, ask “which day...”

1. Tā lái.

他/她来。

He/she is coming.

Tā nǚtiān lái?

他/她哪天来？

What day is he/she coming?

2. Wáng xiānsheng zǒu.

王先生走。

Mr. Wáng is leaving.

Wáng xiānsheng nǚtiān zǒu?

王先生哪天走？

What day is Mr. Wáng leaving?

3. Lǐ tàitai dào.

李太太到。

Mrs. Lǐ is arriving.

Lǐ tàitai nǚtiān dào?

李太太哪天到？

What day is Mrs. Lǐ arriving?

4. Hú tàitai zǒu.

胡太太走。

Mrs. Hú is leaving.

Hú tàitai nǚtiān zǒu.

胡太太哪天走？

What day is Mrs. Hú leaving?

5. Zhāng xiānsheng dào.

张先生到。

Mr. Zhāng is arriving.

Zhāng xiānsheng nǚitiān dào?

张先生哪天到？

What day is Mr. Zhāng arriving?

6. Huáng tàitai lái.

黄太太来。

Mrs. Huáng is coming.

Huáng tàitai nǚitiān lái?

黄太太哪天来。

What day is Mrs. Huáng coming?

7. Tā zǒu.

他/她走。

He/she is leaving.

Tā nǚitiān zǒu?

他/她哪天走？

What day is he/she leaving?

Transformation drill

Transform the statement according to the model

1. Tā shénme shíhou lái?

他/她什么时候来？

When is he/she coming?

Tā shì shénme shíhou lái de?

他/她是什么时候来的？

When did he/she come?

2. Wáng xiānsheng shénme shíhou dào?

先生什么时候到？

When is Mr. Wáng arriving?

Wáng xiānsheng shì shénme shíhou dào de?

王先生是什么时候到的？

When did Mr. Wáng arrive?

3. Lǐ tàitai shénme shíhou zǒu?

李太太什么时候走？

When is Mrs. Lǐ leaving?

Lǐ tàitai shì shénme shíhou zǒu de?

李太太是什么时候走的？

When did Mrs. Lǐ leave?

4. Hú xiānsheng shénme shíhou lái?

胡先生什么时候来？

When is Mr. Hú coming?

Hú xiānsheng shì shénme shíhou lái de?

胡先生是什么时候来的？

When did Mr. Hú come?

5. Huáng tàitai shénme shíhou dào?

黄太太什么时候到？

When is Mrs. Huáng arriving?

Huáng tàitai shì shénme shíhou dàode?

黄太太是什么时候到的？

When did Mrs. Huāng arrive?

6. Lín tàitai shénme shíhou zǒu?

林太太什么时候走？

When is Mrs. Lín leaving?

Lín tàitai shì shénme shíhou zǒude?

林太太是什么时候走的？

When did Mrs. Lín leave?

7. Tā shénme shíhou lái?

他/她什么时候来？

When is he/she coming?

Tā shì shénme shíhou láide?

他/她是什么时候来的？

When did he/she come?

Transformation drill

Respond with a **shi...de.** sentence when the cue makes it appropriate.

1. Tā lái.

他/她来。

He/she is coming.

Cue

míngtiān

明天

tomorrow

Tā míngtiān lái.

他/她明天来。

He/she is coming tomorrow.

2. Tā lái le.

他/她来了。

He/she has come.

Cue

zuótiān

昨天

yesterday

Tā shì zuótiān lái de.

他/她是昨天来的。

He/she has come yesterday.

3. Wáng tàitai zǒu.

王太太走。

Mrs. Wáng is leaving.

Cue

jīntiān

今天

today

Wáng tàitai jīntiān zǒu.

王太太今天走。

Mrs. Wáng is leaving today.

4. Huáng tàitai zǒu le.

黄太太走了。

Mrs. Huáng has left.

Cue

qiántiān

前天

the day before yesterday

Huáng tàitai shì qiántiān zǒude.

黄太太是前天走的。

Mrs. Huáng left the day before yesterday.

5. Lǐ xiānsheng lái.

李先生来。

Mr. Lǐ is coming.

Cue

hòutiān

后天

the day after tomorrow

Lǐ xiānsheng hòutiān lái.

李先生后天来。

Mr. Lǐ is coming the day after tomorrow.

6. Lín xiānsheng lái le.

林先生来了。

Mr. Lín has come.

Cue

zuótiān

昨天

yesterday

Lín xiānsheng shì zuótiān lái de.

林先生是昨天来的。

Mr. Lín came yesterday.

7. Mǎ xiǎojiě dào le.

马小姐到了。

Miss Mǎ has arrived.

Cue

qiántiān

前天

the day before yesterday

Mǎ xiǎojiě shì qiántiān dào de.

马小姐是前天到的。

Miss Mǎ has arrived the day before yesterday.

Response drill

Give affirmative responses to the questions.

1. Tā shì zuótiān lái de ma?

他/她是昨天来的吗？

Did he/she come yesterday?

Shìde. Tā shì zuótiān lái de.

是的。他/她是昨天来的。

Yes, he/she came yesterday.

2. Wáng xiānsheng shì jīntiān dào de ma?

王先生是今天到的吗？

Did Mr. Wáng arrived today?

Shìde. Wáng xiānsheng shì jīntiān dào de.

是的。王先生是今天到的。

Yes, Mr. Wáng arrived today.

3. Lǐ tóngzhì shì qiántiān zǒu de ma?

李同志是前天走的吗？

Did Comrade Lǐ leave the day before yesterday?

Shìde. Lǐ tóngzhì shì qiántiān zǒu de.

是的。李同志是前天走的。

Yes, Comrade Lǐ left the day before yesterday.

4. Máo fūren míngtiān lái ma?

毛夫人明天来吗？

Is Mrs. Máo coming tomorrow?

Shìde. Máo fūren míngtiān lái.

是的。毛夫人明天来？

Yes, Mrs. Máo is coming tomorrow.

5. Tāmen háizi hòutiān dào ma?

他们孩子后天到吗？

Are their children arriving the day after tomorrow?

Shìde. Tāmen háizi hòutian dào.

是的。他们孩子后天到。

Yes, their children are arriving the day after tomorrow.

6. Tā fùmǔ jīntiān zǒu ma?

他/她父母今天走吗？

Are his/her parents leaving?

Shìde. Tā fùmǔ jīntiān zǒu.

是的。他/她父母今天走。

Yes, his/her parents are leaving today.

7. Zhāng nǚshì shì zuótiān lái de ma?

张女士是昨天来的吗？

Did Mrs. Zhāng come yesterday?

Shìde. Zhāng nǚshì shì zuótiān lái de.

是的。张女士是昨天来的。

No, Mrs. Zhāng did not come yesterday.

Response drill

Give negative responses to the **shi... de** questions.

1. Tā shì zuótiān lái de ma?

他/她是昨天来的吗？

Did he/she come yesterday?

Bù. Tā bú shì zuótiān lái de.

不。他/她不是昨天来的。

No, he/she didn't come yesterday.

2. Jiāng xiānsheng shì jīntiān dào de ma?

江先生是今天道德吗？

Did Mr. Jiāng arrive today?

Bù. Jiāng xiānsheng bú shì jīntiān dào de.

不。江先生不是今天到的。

No, Mr. Jiāng didn't arrive today.

3. Zhāng tóngzhì shì qiántiān zǒu de ma?

张同志是前天走的吗？

Did Comrade Zhāng leave the day before yesterday?

Bù. Zhāng tóngzhì bú shì qiántiān zǒu de.

不。张同志不是前天走的。

No, Comrade Zhāng didn't leave day before yesterday.

4. Tāmen shì zuótiān lái de ma?

他们是昨天来的吗？

Did they come yesterday?

Bù. Tāmen bú shì zuótiān lái de.

不。他们不是昨天来的。

No, they didn't come yesterday.

5. Tāmen háizi shì qiántiān dào de ma?

他们孩子是前天到的吗？

Did their children arrive the day before yesterday?

Bù. Tāmen háizi bú shì qiántian dào de.

不。他们孩子不是前天到的。

No, their children didn't arrive the day before yesterday.

6. Hé tóngzhì shì jīntiān zǒu de ma?

何同志是今天走的吗？

Did comrade Hé leave today?

Bù. Hé tóngzhì bú shì jīntiān zǒu de.

不。何同志不是今天走的。

No, Comrade Hé didn't leave today.

7. Tā àiren shì zuótiān lái de ma?

他/她爱人是昨天来的吗？

Did his/her spouse come yesterday?

Bù. Tā àiren bú shì zuótiān lái de.

不。他/她爱人不是昨天来的。

No, his/her spouse didn't come yesterday.

Response drill

According to the cues, give an affirmative or a negative response to each **shi...de** question.

1. **Tā shì zuótiān lái de ma?**

他/她是昨天来的吗？

Did he/she come yesterday?

Cue affirmative

Shì de. Tā shì zuótiān lái de.

是的。他/她是昨天来的。

Yes, he/she came yesterday.

2. **Tā shì zuótiān lái de ma?**

他/她是昨天来的？

Did he/she come yesterday?

Cue negative

Bù. Tā bú shì zuótiān lái de.

不。他/她不是昨天来的。

No, he/she didn't come yesterday.

3. **Wáng tóngzhì shì qiántiān dào de ma?**

王同志是前天到的吗？

Did Comrade **Wáng** arrive the day before yesterday?

Cue negative

Bù. Wáng tóngzhì bú shì qiántiān dào de.

不。王同志不是前天到的。

No, Comrade **Wáng** didn't arrive the day before yesterday.

4. **Tā gēge shì jīntiān lái de ma?**

他/她哥哥是今天来的吗？

Did his/her older brother come today?

Cue negative

Bù. Tā gēge bú shì jīntiān láide.

不。他/她哥哥不是今天来的。

No, his/her older brother didn't come today.

5. Lǐ xiānsheng shì jīntiān zǒude ma?

李先生是今天走的吗？

Did Mr. Lǐ leave today?

Cue negative

Bù. Lǐ xiānsheng bú shì jīntiān zǒude.

不。李先生不是今天走的。

No, Mr. Lǐ didn't leave today.

6. Zhào fūren shì zuótiān dào de ma?

赵夫人是昨天到的吗？

Did Mrs. Zhào arrive yesterday?

Cue affirmative

Shìde. Zhào fūren shì zuótiān dào de.

是的。赵夫人是昨天到的。

Yes, Mrs. Zhào did arrive yesterday.

7. Tāmen háizi shì qiántiān zǒude ma?

他们孩子是前天走的吗？

Did their children leave the day before yesterday?

Cue negative

Bù. Tāmen háizi bú shì qiántiān zǒude.

不。他们孩子不是前天走的。

No, their children didn't leave the day before yesterday.

8. Sūn nǚshì shì zuótiān dào de ma?

孙女士是昨天到的吗？

Did Mrs. Sūn arrive yesterday?

Cue negative

Bù. Sūn nǚshì bú shì zuótiān dào de.

不。孙女士不是昨天到的。

No, Mrs. Sūn didn't arrive yesterday

Unit 5

Introduction

Topics covered in this unit

1. Date and Place of birth.
2. Days of the week.
3. Ages.
4. The marker **le** for new situations.

Material you will need

1. The C-1 and P-1 tapes, the Reference List and Reference Notes.
2. The C-2 and P-2 tapes.
3. The 5D-1 tape.

References

Reference List

1. A: **Āndésēn fūren, nǐ shì zài nǎr shēngde?**
安德森夫人，你是在哪儿生的？
Mrs. Andersen, where were you born?
B: **Wǒ shì zài Dézhōu shēngde.**
我是在得州生的。
I was born in Texas.
2. A: **Nǐmen shì Xīngqīsì dào de ma?**
你们是星期四到的吗？
Did you arrive on Thursday?
B: **Bú shì, wǒmen shì Xīngqīwǔ dào de.**
不是，我们是星期五到的。
No, we arrived on Friday.
3. A: **Nǐmen xīngqījǐ zǒu?**
你们星期几走？
What day of the week are you leaving?
B: **Wǒmen Xīngqītiān zǒu.**
我们星期天走。
We are leaving on Sunday.
4. A: **Nǐ shì něinián shēngde?**
你是哪年生的？
What year are you born?
B: **Wǒ shì Yī jiǔ sān jiǔ nián shēngde.**
我是一九三九年生的。
I was born in 1939.
5. A: **Nǐ shì jǐ yuè shēngde?**
你是几月生的？
What month were you born?
B: **Wǒ shì Qī yuè shēngde.**
我是七月生的。
I was born in July.
6. A: **Nǐ shì jǐ hào shēngde?**
你是几号生的？
What day of the month were you born?

7.^a B: Wǒ shì Sìhào shēngde.
我是四号生的。
I was born on the fourth.

A: Nǐ duó dà le?
你多大了?
How old are you?

8.^b B: Wǒ èr shí sì le.
我二十四了。
I'm 24.

A: Nǐ duó dà le?
你多大了?
How old are you?

B: Wǒ sān shí wǔ le.
我三十五了。
I'm 35.

9. A: Nǐmen nǚháizi jǐsui le?
你们女孩子几岁了?
How old is your girl?

B: Tā bāsuì le.
她八岁了。
She's eight years old.

10. A: Nǐmen nánháizi dōu jǐsui le?
你们男孩子都几岁了?
How old are your boys?

B: Yíge jiǔsui le, yíge liùsui le.
一个九岁了, 一个六岁了。
One is nine, and one is six.

^aThis exchange occurs on the C-1 tape only.
^bThis exchange occurs on the P-1 tape only.

Vocabulary

duó dà	多大	how old
hòunián (hòunian)	后年	the year after next
jǐhào	几号	what day of the month?
jīnnián (jīnnian)	今年	this year
jǐsuì	几岁	how old
jǐyüè	几月	what month
míngnián (míngnian)	明年	next year
něinián	哪年?	which year
niánnián (niánnian)	年年	every year
qiánnián (qiánnian)	前年	the year before last
qùnián (qùnian)	去年	last year
shàngge yuè	上个月	last month
shēng	生	to be born
-suì	岁	year (of age)
xiàge yuè	下个月	next month
Xīngqīèr	星期二	Tuesday
xīngqījǐ	星期几	what day of the week
Xīngqīliù	星期六	Saturday
Xīngqīsān	星期三	Wednesday
Xīngqīsì	星期四	Thursday
Xīngqītiān, Xīngqīrì	星期天, 星期日	Sunday
Xīngqīwǔ	星期五	Friday
Xīngqīyī	星期一	Monday
zhèige yuè	这个月	this month

Reference Notes

Notes on №1

1. A: Āndésēn fūren, nǐ shì zài nǎr shēngde? 安德森夫人，你是在哪儿生的？ Mrs. Andersen, where were you born?
- B: Wǒ shì zài Dézhōu shēngde. 我是在得州生的。 I was born in Texas.

The **shi...de** construction is used to focus on place expressions as well as on time and manner expressions.

Wǒ	shì	zài Měiguó	shēng	-de.	I was born in America. WHERE
我	是	在美国	生	的。	
Wǒ	shì	zuótiān	dào	-de.	I arrived yesterday. WHEN
我	是	昨天	到	的。	
Wǒ	shì	yíge rén	lái	-de.	I came alone. HOW
我	是	一个人	来	的	

Notes on №2-3

2. A: *Nǐmen shì Xīngqīsì dào de ma?* 你们是星期四到的吗? Did you arrive on Thursday?
- B: *Bú shì, wǒmen shì Xīngqīwǔ dào de.* 不是, 我们是星期五到的。 No, we arrived on Friday.
3. A: *Nǐmen xīngqījǐ zǒu?* 你们星期几走? What day of the week are you leaving?
- B: *Wǒmen Xīngqītiān zǒu.* 我们星期天走。 We are leaving on Sunday.

Days of the week:

<i>Xīngqījǐ</i>	What day of the week?
星期几	
<i>Xīngqīyī</i>	Monday
星期一	
<i>Xīngqīèr</i>	Tuesday
星期二	
<i>Xīngqīsān</i>	Wednesday
星期三	
<i>Xīngqīsì</i>	Thursday
星期四	
<i>Xīngqīwǔ</i>	Friday
星期五	
<i>Xīngqīliù</i>	Saturday
星期六	
<i>Xīngqītiān</i>	Sunday
星期天	

Until now, you have always seen *jǐ*, “how many,” at the beginning of a word (*jǐge háizi*, *jǐwèi xiānsheng*, *jǐhào*). In *xīngqījǐ*, *-jǐ* is at the end of the word. In both places, occupies the position of a number and acts like a number: *xīngqījǐ*, “What number day of the week?”

Notes on №4

4. A: **Nǐ shì nǎinián shēngde?** 你是哪年生的？ What year are you born?
B: **Wǒ shì yī jiǔ sān jiǔ nián shēngde.** 我是一九三九年生的。 I was born in 1939.

The word for “year,” **-nián** is a bound word (like the word for “day,” **-tiān**). The question word **něinián**, “which year,” is formed with the bound word **něi** “which.”

The year is given as a sequence of digits, so that 1972, **yījiǔqīèrnián** would literally be “one-nine-seven-two year.” In a sequence of digits, the word **èr-** (not **liǎng-** is used for 2, and the words for 1, 7, and 8 keep their basic high tones. (See notes on No. 10 for cases in which these tones change.)

Notes on №5

5. A: *Nǐ shì jǐ yuè shēngde?* 你是几月生的? What month were you born?
 B: *Wǒ shì Qī yuè shēngde.* 我是七月生的。 I was born in July.

Months:

<i>jǐ yuè?</i> 几月	What month?		
<i>yī yuè</i> 一月	January	<i>qī yuè</i> 七月	July
<i>èr yuè</i> 二月		<i>bā yuè</i> 八月	
<i>sān yuè</i> 三月	March	<i>jiǔ yuè</i> 九月	September
<i>sì yuè</i> 四月		<i>shí yuè</i> 十月	
<i>wǔ yuè</i> 五月	May	<i>shí yī yuè</i> 十一月	November
<i>liù yuè</i> 六月		<i>shí èr yuè</i> 十二月	

Since the names of the months are formed with numbers, *jǐ*- “how many,” is the appropriate question word to use for “what month.” *Jǐ*- is used in *Běijīng* to ask for a number expected to be around 10 or 11.

Notice the tones on the words for 1, 7 and 8, which most Peking speakers pronounce as Rising before Falling-tone words such as *yuè*. The syllable *-yī-* in the word for “November,” however, is usually pronounced with the High tone: *shí yī yuè* (See the notes on No. 10 for a summary of tone changes.)

Notes on №6

- | | | | |
|----|---------------------------------|---------|--------------------------------------|
| 6. | A: Nǐ shì jǐhào shēngde? | 你是几号生的？ | What day of the month were you born? |
| | B: Wǒ shì Sìhào shēngde. | 我是四号生的。 | I was born on the fourth. |

Days of the month are expressed by the number of the day followed by the bound word **-hào**. You will remember that **-hào** is also used in giving addresses.

In asking about days of the month, “how many,” is used, even though the question may be answered by a number as high as 31. The month and day of the month may be given together. For example:

Nǐ shì jǐyuè jǐhào shēngde?	What is your month and day of birth?
你是几月几号生的？	
Wǒ shì bāyuè jiǔhào shēngde.	I was born on August 9.
我是八月九号生的。	

Notes on №7-8

7.	A: Nǐ duó dà le?	你多大了?	How old are you?
	B: Wǒ èr shí sì le.	我二十四了。	I'm 24.
8.	A: Nǐ duó dà le?	你多大了?	How old are you?
	B: Wǒ sān shí wǔ le.	我三十五了。	I'm 35.

Nǐ duó dà le? “How old are you?” literally means “How big (in years of age) are you?” This is a common way to ask a person’s age. The question is appropriate for asking the age of a child or a young adult, but the expression is not considered polite enough for asking an older adult his age. (More formal ways to ask a person’s age will be introduced on the C-2, P-2, and drill tapes.)

The marker **le** which ends these sentences calls attention to the fact that something is true now that was not true before.

 **Note**

Ages may also be asked and given without using the new-situation **le**.

Le has only this new-situation meaning in these sentences. It has no meaning of completion, since in fact, there is no completed event.

One way to reflect the new-situation **le** in the English translation is to add the word “now”: “I’m 35 now.” Essentially, however, “new situation” (sometimes called “change of state”) is a Chinese grammatical category with no simple English equivalent.

The marker **le** for new situations is always found at the end of a sentence and is sometimes called “sentence **le**.”

Notice that neither answer contains a verb. The verb that has been left out is **yǒu** “to have.” The verb may not be left out in the negative: **Wǒ méiyǒu sānshíwǔ.** “I’m not 35.”

Notes on №9

9. A: Nǐmen nǚháizi jǐsuì le? 你们女孩子 几岁了? How old is your girl?
B: Tā bāsuì le. 她八岁了。 She's eight years old.

-suì: In the traditional Chinese system of giving ages, a person is one **-sui** old at birth and becomes another **-suì** old on the New Year's following his birth. A baby born the day before New Year's would thus be two **-suì** old on the day after his birth. Most Chinese, however, have now switched to the Western style of computing age and use **-suì** just as we use years old.

The word **-suì** like the word **-hào**, is a bound word showing what kind of thing a number is counting.

In a date or address you are listing a number and use **èr** for 2, while in giving an age you are counting an amount of something and use **liǎng**: **liǎngsuì**, "two years old."

Notes on №10

10. A: **Nǐmen nánháizi dōu jǐsuì le?** 你们男孩子都几岁了? How old are your boys?
- B: **Yíge jiǔsuì le, yíge liùsuì le.** 一个九岁了, 一个六岁了。 One is nine, and one is six.

The word **dōu** is used when “both” or “all” would probably not be used in English, namely, when expecting different information about each of the things (or persons) being discussed. “All” tends to be collective, asking or telling about something the members of a group have in common. **Dōu** can be distributive, asking or telling something about the members of a group as individuals.

Yí, qí, bá: In the spoken language of Peking, the basic High tones of **yī, qī** and **bā** usually change to Rising tones before Falling-tone words (such as **-hào, yuè,** and **-suì**). This change is most common when the complete number given has only one digit. When there are two or more digits, the **qī** and **bā** of numbers ending in 7 and 8 are more likely to have Rising tones than the **yī** of numbers ending in 1 (which is usually in the High tone).

Compare:

shíqīhào	the 17th
十七号	
shíyīyuè	November
十一月	

In all cases, the High tone is more likely to be kept in rapid speech. You may also encounter speakers who never make changes in the tones of **yī, qī** and **bā**.

Remember that, in the digit-by-digit form of giving the year, the numbers 1, 7, and 8 keep their basic High tones: **yījiǔbāliùnián** 1986.

Notes on additional required vocabulary

Days	qiántiān	zuótiān	jīntiān	míngtiān	hòutiān
	前田	昨天	今天	明天	后天
Years	qiánnián	qùnián	jīnnián	míngnián	hòunián
	千年	去年	今年	名年	后年

In the Chinese system of expressing relative time in terms of days and years, only one pair of terms is not parallel: **zuótiān** “yesterday,” and **qùnián** “last year.”

 Note

added by Eric Streit with the explanations given by a Chinese native about the drills I and the use of **suìshu** 岁数 and **Niánjì** 年纪

- **suìshu** 岁数 and **Niánjì** 年纪 usually and mostly refer to OLDER people that you ask for. **suìshu** 岁数 is very spoken though. And less polite.
- For kids especially, you only need to do 多大了? **duó dà le?** or 几岁了? **jǐsuì le?**
- with 几岁了? neither **suìshu** 岁数 nor **Niánjì** 年纪.

Drills

Response Drill

According to the cues, give an answer to each **shi...de** question.

1. **Qǐngwèn, tā shì zài nǎr shēngde?**

请问，他/她是在哪儿生的？

May I ask, where was he/she born?

Cue **Dézhōu**

德州

Texas

Tā shì zài Dézhōu shēngde.

他/她是在德州生的。

He/she was born in Texas.

2. **Qǐngwèn, nǐ àiren shì zài nǎr shēngde?**

请问，你爱人是在哪儿生的？

May I ask, where was your spouse born?

Cue **Jiāzhōu**

加州

California

Tā shì zài Jiāzhōu shēngde.

他/她是在加州生的。

He/she was born in California.

3. **Qǐngwèn, tā àiren shì zài nǎr shēngde?**

请问，他/她爱人是在哪儿生的？

May I ask, where was his/her spouse born?

Cue **Shànghǎi**

上海

Shànghǎi

Tā shì zài Shànghǎi shēngde.

请问，曾先生是在哪儿生的？

May I ask, where was Mr. Zēng born?

Cue

Niǔ Yüē

纽约

New York

Tā shì zài Niǔ Yüē shēngde.

他是在纽约生的。

He was born in New York.

Substitution drill

Transform the question according to the model.

1. Qǐngwèn, nǐ shénme shíhou zǒu?

请问，你是什么时候走？

May I ask, when are you leaving?

Cue

něitiān

哪天

what day

Qǐngwèn, nǐ něitiān zǒu?

请问，你哪天走？

May I ask, what day are you leaving?

2. Qǐngwèn, nǐ něitiān zǒu?

请问，你哪天走？

May I ask, what day are you leaving?

Cue

jǐyüè

几月

what month

Qǐngwèn, nǐ jǐyüè zǒu?

请问，你几月走？

May I ask, what month are you leaving?

3. Qǐngwèn, nǐ jǐyüè zǒu?

请问，你几月走？

May I ask, what month are you leaving?

Cue

jǐhào

几号

what day of the month

Qǐngwèn, nǐ jǐhào zǒu?

请问，你几号走？

May I ask, what day of the month are you leaving?

4. Qǐngwèn, nǐ jǐhào zǒu?
请问，你几号走？
May I ask, what day of the month are you leaving?

Cue nǐnián
哪年
what year

Qǐngwèn, nǐ nǐnián zǒu?
请问，你哪年走？
May I ask, what year are you leaving?

5. Qǐngwèn, nǐ nǐnián zǒu?
请问，你哪年走？
May I ask, May I ask, what year are you leaving?

Cue jǐyüè jǐhào
几月几号
what month and what day of the month

Qǐngwèn, nǐ jǐyüè jǐhào zǒu?
请问，你几月几号走？
May I ask, what month, what day of the month are you leaving?

6. Qǐngwèn, nǐ jǐyüè jǐhào zǒu?
请问，你几月几号走？
May I ask, what month, what day of the month are you leaving?

Cue xīngqījǐ
星期几
what day of the week

Qǐngwèn, nǐ xīngqījǐ zǒu?
请问，你星期几走？
May I ask, what day of the week are you leaving?

Substitution drill

Transform the statement according to the model.

1. Wǒmen xīngqīyī zǒu.

我们星期一走。

We are leaving on Monday.

Cue

xīngqīèr

星期二

Tuesday

Wǒmen xīngqīèr zǒu.

我们星期二走。

We are leaving on Tuesday.

2. Wǒmen xīngqīèr zǒu.

我们星期二走。

We are leaving on Tuesday.

Cue

xīngqīsān

星期三

Wednesday

Wǒmen xīngqīsān zǒu.

我们星期三走。

We are leaving on Wednesday.

3. Wǒmen xīngqīsān zǒu.

我们星期三走。

We are leaving on Wednesday.

Cue

xīngqīsì

星期四

Thursday

Wǒmen xīngqīsì zǒu.

我们星期四走。

We are leaving on Thursday.

4. Wǒmen xīngqīsì zǒu.

我们星期四走。

We are leaving on Thursday.

Cue xīngqījǐ

星期几

What day of the week

Wǒmen xīngqījǐ zǒu?

我们星期几走？

What day of the week are you leaving?

5. Wǒmen xīngqījǐ zǒu?

我们星期几走？

What day of the week are you leaving?

Cue xīngqīwǔ

星期五

Friday

Wǒmen xīngqīwǔ zǒu.

我们星期五走。

We are leaving on Friday.

6. Wǒmen xīngqīwǔ zǒu.

我们星期五走。

We are leaving on Friday.

Cue xīngqītiān

星期天

Sunday

Wǒmen xīngqītiān zǒu.

我们星期天走。

We are leaving on Sunday.

7. Wǒmen xīngqītiān zǒu.

我们星期天走。

We are leaving on Sunday.

Cue xīngqīliù

星期六
Saturday

Wǒmen xīngqīliù zǒu.

我们星期六走。

We are leaving on Saturday.

8. Wǒmen xīngqīliù zǒu.

我们星期六走。

We are leaving on Saturday.

Cue xīngqīyī
星期一
Monday

Wǒmen xīngqīyī zǒu.

我们星期一走。

We are leaving on Monday.

Response drill

According to the cues, give a response to each question.

1. Nǐ háizi shì nǎinián shēngde?

你孩子是哪天生的？

What year was your child born?

Cue 1971

Tā shì yījiǔqīyīnián shēngde.

他/她是一九七一年生的。

He/she was born in 1971.

2. Lǐ xiānsheng shì nǎinián shēngde?

李先生是哪年生的？

What year was Mr. Lǐ born?

Cue 1944

Tā shì yījiǔsìsìnián shēngde.

他是一九四四年生的。

He was born in 1944.

3. Nǐ dìdi shì nǎinián shēngde?

你弟弟是哪年生的？

What year was your younger brother born?

Cue 1940

Tā shì yījiǔsìlíngnián shēngde.

他是一九四零年生的。

He was born in 1940.

4. Nèige háizi shì nǎinián shēngde?

那个孩子是哪年生的？

What year was that child born?

Cue 1967

Tā shì yījiǔliùqīnián shēngde.

他/她是一九六七年生的。

He/she was born in 1967.

5. Zhèige nánháizi shì nǎinián shēngde?

这个男孩子是哪年生的？

What year was this boy born?

Cue 1968

Tā shì yījiǔliùbānián shēngde.

他/她是一九六八生的。

He was born in 1968.

6. Nèige rén shì nǎinián shēngde?

那个人是哪年生的？

What year was that person born?

Cue 1927

Tā shì yījiǔèrqīnián shēngde.

他/她是一九二七年生的。

He/she was born in 1927.

7. Tā shì nǎinián shēngde?

他/她是哪年生的？

What year was he/she born?

Cue 1933

Tā shì yījiǔsānsānnián shēngde.

他/她是一九三三年生的。

He/she was born in 1933.

Response drill

According to the cues, give a response to each question.

1. Tā shì jǐ yuè shēng de?

他/她是几月生的？

What month was he/she born?

Cue

èryuè

二月

February

Tā shì èryuè shēng de.

他/她是二月生的。

He/she was born in February.

2. Tā ài ren shì jǐ yuè shēng de?

他/她爱人是几月生的？

What month was his/her spouse born?

Cue

wǔ yuè

五月

May

Tā shì wǔ yuè shēng de.

他/她是五月生的。

He/she was born in May.

3. Zhāng tóngzhì shì jǐ yuè shēng de?

张同志是几月生的？

What month was Comrade Zhāng born?

Cue

sì yuè

四月

April

Tā shì sì yuè shēng de.

他/她是四月生的。

He/she was born in April.

4. Wáng tóngzhì shì jǐ yuè shēng de?

王同志是几月生的？

What month was Comrade Wáng born?

Cue shíyī yuè

十一月

November

Tā shì shíyī yuè shēng de.

他/她是十一月生的。

He/she was born in November.

5. Nǐ ài rén shì jǐ yuè shēng de?

你爱人是几月生的？

What month was your spouse born?

Cue bā yuè

八月

August

Tā shì bā yuè shēng de.

他/她是八月生的。

He/she was born in August.

6. Nǐ gē ge shì jǐ yuè shēng de?

你哥哥是几月生的？

What month was your older brother born?

Cue shíèr yuè

十二月

December

Tā shì shíèr yuè shēng de.

他是十二月生的。

He was born in December.

7. Tā mèi mei shì jǐ yuè shēng de?

他/她妹妹是几月生的？

What month was your younger sister born?

Cue liù yuè

六月
June

Tā shì liùyuè shēngde.

她是六月生的。

She was born in June.

Expansion drill

According to the cues, give a response to each statement.

1. Tā shì yíyuè shēngde.

他/她是一月生的。

He/she was born in January.

Cue yíhào
一号
first

Tā shì yíyuè yíhào shēngde.

他/她是一月一号生的。

He/she was born in January first.

2. Tā shì yíyuè shēngde.

他/她是一月生的。

He/she was born in January.

Cue shíyīhào
十一号
11th

Tā shì yíyuè shíyīhào shēngde.

他/她是一月十一号生的。

He/she was born on the 11th of January.

3. Tā shì yíyuè shēngde.

他/她是一月生的。

He/she was born in January.

Cue èrshíliùhào
二十六号
26th

Tā shì yíyuè èrshíliùhào shēngde.

他/她是一月二十六号生的。

He/she was born on the 26th of January.

4. Tā shì yíyuè shēngde.

他/她是一月上的。

He/she was born in January.

Cue qīhào
七号
7th

Tā shì yíyuè qīhào shēngde.

他/她是一月七号生的。

He/she was born on the 7th of January.

5. Tā shì yíyuè shēngde.

他/她是一月生的。

He/she was born in January.

Cue shísìhào
十四号
14th

Tā shì yíyuè shísìhào shēngde.

他/她是一月十四号生的。

He/she was born on the 14th of January.

6. Tā shì yíyuè shēngde.

他/她是一月生的。

He/she was born in January.

Cue èrshíbāhào
二十八号
28th

Tā shì yíyuè èrshíbāhào shēngde.

他/她是一月二十八号生的。

He/she was born on the 28th of January.

7. Tā shì yíyuè shēngde.

他/她是一月生的。

He/she was born in January.

Cue shíhào

十号

10th

Tā shì yíyuè shíhào shēngde.

他/她是一月十号生的。

He/she was born on the 10th of January.

Response drill

According to the cues, give a response to each question.

1. Nǐmen nǚhāizi jǐsù le?

你们女孩子几岁了？

How old is your daughter?

Cue 5

Tā wǔsù le.

她五岁了。

She is 5.

2. Tāmen nánhāizi jǐsù le?

他们男孩子几岁了？

How old is their boy?

Cue 11

Tā shíyīsù le.

他十一岁了。

He is 11.

3. Hú tàitai nǚhāizi jǐsù le?

胡太太女孩子几岁了？

How old is Mrs. Hú's daughter?

Cue 13

Tā shísānsù le.

她十三岁了。

She is 13.

4. Tā mèimei jǐsù le?

他/她妹妹几岁了？

How old is his/her younger sister?

Cue 7

Tā qísù le.

她七岁了。

She is 7.

5. Nǐ nánháizi jǐsui le?

你男孩子几岁了？

How old is your boy?

Cue 6

Tā liùsui le.

他六岁了。

He is 6.

6. Nǐ nǚháizi jǐsui le?

你女孩子几岁了？

How old is your daughter?

Cue 4

Tā sìsui le .

她四岁了。

She is 4.

7. Nèige nánháizi jǐsui le?

那个男孩子几岁了？

How old is that boy?

Cue 8

Tā bāsui le.

他八岁了。

He is 8.

Response drill

According to the cues, give a response to each question.

1. Tā duó dà le?
他/她多大了?
How old is he/she?

Cue 35

Tā sānshiwǔ le.
他/她三十五了。
He/she is 35.

2. Nǐ gēge duó dà le?
你哥哥多大了?
How old is your older brother?

Cue 44

Tā sìshìsì le.
他四十四了。
He is 44.

3. Nǐ dìdì duó dà le?
你弟弟多大了?
How old is your younger brother?

Cue 30

Tā sānshí le.
他三十了。
He is 30.

4. Tā jiějie duó dà le?
他/她姐姐多大了?
How old is his/her older sister?

Cue 47

Tā sìshíqī le.

她四十七了。

She is 47.

5. Nǐ mèimei duó dà le?

你妹妹多大了？

How old is your younger sister?

Cue 32

Tā sānshèr le.

她三十二了。

She is 32.

6. Tā àiren duó dà le?

他/她爱人多大了？

How old is his/her spouse?

Cue 28

Tā èrshíbā le.

他/她二十八了。

He/she is 28.

7. Wáng tóngzhì duó dà le?

王同志多大了？

How old is Comrade Wáng?

Cue 41

Tā sìshíyī le.

他/她四十一了。

He/she is 41.

Response drill

According to the cues, give a response to each question.

1. Nín mǔqīn duō dà suìshù le?

您母亲多大岁数了？

How old is your mother?

Cue 65

Tā liùshiwǔsù le.

她六十五岁了。

She is 65.

2. Nín fùqīn duō dà suìshù le?

您父亲多大岁数了？

How old is your father?

Cue 67

Tā liùshiqīsù le.

他六十七岁了。

He is 67.

3. Tā jiějie duō dà suìshù le?

他/她姐姐多大岁数了？

How old is his/her older sister?

Cue 46

Tā sìshiliùsù le.

他四十六岁了。

She is 46.

4. Tā gēge duō dà suìshù le?

他/她哥哥多大岁数了？

How old is his/her older brother?

Cue 44

Tā sìshìsù le.

他四十四岁了。

He is 44.

5. Zhāng xiānsheng duódà suìshu le?

张先生多大岁数了？

How old is Mr. Zhāng?

Cue 72

Tā qīshìèrsuì le.

他七十二岁了。

He is 72.

6. Wáng tàitai duó dà suìshu le?

王太太多大岁数了？

How old is Mrs. Wáng?

Cue 59

Tā wǔshíjiǔsuì le.

她五十九岁了。

She is 59.

7. Wáng tàitai mèimei duó dà suìshu le?

王太太妹妹多大岁数了？

How old is Mrs. Wáng's younger sister?

Cue 58

Tā wǔshíbāsuì le.

她五十八岁了。

She is 58.

Substitution drill

Substitute **shàngge yuè**, “last month” (May), **zhèige yuè**, “this month” (June), or **xiàge yuè**, “next month” (July), according to the month mentioned in the speaker’s sentence.

1. Tā shì wǔyuè lái de.

他/她是五月来的。

He/she came in May.

Où. Tā shì shàngge yuè lái de.

哦。他/她是上个月来的。

Oh. He/she came last month.

2. Tā qīyuè lái.

他/她七月来。

He/she is coming in July.

Où. Tā xiàge yuè lái.

哦。他/她下个月来。

Oh. He/she is coming next month.

3. Tā liùyuè lái.

他/她六月来。

He/she is coming in June.

Où. Tā zhèige yuè lái.

哦。他/她这个月来。

Oh. He/she is coming this month.

4. Tā shì liùyuè lái de.

他/她是六月来的。

He/she is came in June.

Où. Tā shì zhèige yuè lái de.

哦。他/她这个月来的。

Oh. He/she came this month.

5. Tā qīyuè zǒu.

他/她七月走。

He/she is leaving in September.

Où. Tā xiàgè yuè zǒu.

哦。他/她下个月走。

Oh. He/she is leaving next month.

6. Tā shì wǔ yuè dào de.

他/她是五月到的。

He/she arrived in May.

Où. Tā shì shànggè yuè dào de.

哦。他/她是上个月到的。

Oh. He/she is arrived last month.

7. Tā shì liù yuè zǒu de.

他/她是六月走的。

He/she left on June.

Où. Tā shì zhègè yuè zǒu de.

哦。他/她是这个月走的。

Oh. He/she left this month.

Transformation drill

Each of the speaker's statements is the answer to a question. After hearing each answer, ask the question which could have prompted the response.

1. Tā shì yījiǔsānwǔnián shēngde.

他/她是一九三五年生的。

He/she was born in 1935.

Tā shì něinián shēngde?

他/她是哪年生的？

What year was he/she born?

2. Tā shì sìyuè láide.

他/她是四月来的。

He/she came in April.

Tā shì jǐyuè láide?

他/她是几月来的？

What month did he/she come?

3. Tā shì xīngqīwǔ zǒude.

他/她是星期五走的。

He/she left on Friday.

Tā shì xīngqījǐ zǒude?

他/她是星期几走的？

What day of the week did he/she leave?

4. Tā shì qīhào dào de.

他/她是七号到的。

He/she has arrived on the seventh.

Tā shì jǐhào dào de?

他/她是几号到的？

What day of the month did he/she arrive?

5. Tā shì yījiǔqīsìnián láide.

他/她是一九七四年来的。

He/she has come in 1974.

Tā shì nǎinián lái de?

他/她是哪年来的？

What year did he/she come?

6. Tā shì xīngqītiān zǒu de.

他/她是星期天走的。

He/she has left on Sunday.

Tā shì xīngqījǐ zǒu de?

他/她是星期几走的？

What day did he/she leave.

7. Tā shì jiǔ yuè shēng de.

他/她是九月生的。

He/she was born in September.

Tā shì jǐ yuè shēng de?

他/她是几月生的？

What month was he/she born?

Unit 6

Introduction

Topics covered in this unit

1. Duration phrases
2. The marker **le** for completion.
3. The “double **le**” construction.
4. The marker **-guo**.
5. Action verbs.
6. State verbs.

Material you will need

1. The C-1 and P-1 tapes, the Reference List and Reference Notes.
2. The C-2 and P-2 tapes, the Workbook.
3. The 6D-1 tape.

References

Reference List

1. A: **Nǐ zhù duó jiǔ?**
你住多久?
How long are you staying?
B: **Wǒ zhù yìnián.**
我住一年。
I'm staying one year.
2. A: **Nǐ tàitai zhù duó jiǔ?**
你太太住多久?
How long is your wife staying?
B: **Tā zhù liǎngtiān.**
她住两天。
She is staying two days.
3. A: **Nǐ tàitai zài Xiānggǎng zhù duó jiǔ?**
你太太在香港住多久?
How long is your wife staying in Hong Kong?
B: **Wǒ xiǎng tā zhù liǎngtiān.**
我想她住两天。
I think she is staying two days.
4. A: **Nǐ xiǎng zhù duò jiǔ?**
你想住多久?
How long are you thinking of staying?
B: **Wǒ xiǎng zhù yìnián.**
我想住一年。
I'm thinking of staying one year.
5. A: **Nǐ xiǎng zài Táiwān zhù duó jiǔ?**
你想在台湾住多久?
How long are you thinking of staying in Taiwan?
B: **Wǒ xiǎng zhù bāge yuè.**
我想住八个月。
I'm thinking of staying eight months.
- 6.^a A: **Nǐ péngyou xiǎng zhù duó jiǔ?**
你朋友想住多久?
How long is your friend thinking of staying?

7. B: Tā xiǎng zhù liǎngge xīngqī.
他想住两个星期。
He is thinking of staying two weeks.
- A: Nǐ lái le duō jiǔ le?
你来了多久了?
How long have you been there?
- B: Wǒ lái le sāntiān le.
我来了三天了。
I have been here three days.
8. A: Nǐ tài tai zài Xiānggǎng zhù le duō jiǔ?
你太太在香港住了多久?
How long did your wife stay in Hong Kong?
- B: Tā zhù le liǎngtiān.
她住了两天。
She stayed two days.
9. A: Tā lái le ma?
他来了吗?
Did he come?
- B: Lái le, tā lái le.
来了，他来了。
Yes, he came.
10. A: Tā lái le ma?
他来了吗?
Did he come?
- B: Méi lái, tā méi lái.
没来，他没来。
No, he didn't come.
11. A: Nǐ cóngqián lái guo ma?
你从前来过吗?
Have you ever been here before?
- B: Wǒ cóngqián méi lái guo.
我从前没来过。
I have never been here before.

^aThis exchange occurs on the C-1 tape only.

Vocabulary

qù	去	to go
Niǔ Yūē	纽约	New York
cóngqián	从前	in the past
duó jiǔ	多久	how long
-guo	一过	experiential marker
xiǎng	想	to think that, to want to, would you like to
Xiānggǎng	香港	Hong Kong
xīngqī	星期	week
zhù	住	to live somewhere

Reference Notes

Notes on №1

1. A: **Nǐ zhù duó jiǔ?** 你住多久? How long are you staying?
 B: **Wǒ zhù yìnián.** 我住一年。 I'm staying one year.

Expressions like **duó jiǔ**, “how long,” and **yìnián** “one year,” called duration phrases, come after the verb.

 Note

“One day” is **yìtiān**. The tone on **yī** changes to Falling before a High-tone.

Notice the contrast with time-when phrases, like **shénme shíhou**, “when,” and **jīnnián** “this year,” which comes before the verb.

Nǐ	shénme shíhou	zǒu ?		When are you leaving?
你	什么时候	走?		
Nǐ		zhù	duó jiǔ?	How long are you staying?
你		住	多久?	

If a duration phrase is used with the verb **zhù**, this phrase preempts the position after the verb; and any place phrase, like **zài Běijīng**, must come before the verb.

Wǒ		zhù	zài Běijīng.	I'm living in Běijīng.
我		住	在北京。	
Nǐ	zài Běijīng	zhù	duó jiǔ?	How long are you staying in Běijīng?
你	在北京	住	多久?	

Yìnián: In telling how many years (giving an amount) no counter is used. The tone on **yī**, “one,” changes to Falling before a Rising tone.

Notes on №2

- | | | | |
|----|---------------------------|---------|--------------------------------|
| 2. | A: Nǐ tàitai zhù duó jiǔ? | 你太太住多久？ | How long is your wife staying? |
| | B: Ta zhù liǎngtiān. | 她住两天。 | She is staying two days. |

Liǎngtiān: -tiān, “day,” like -nián, “year,” is used without a counter. When telling how many of something, the number 2 takes the form liǎng. (See Unit 3, notes on Nos. 3-4.)

Notes on №3-4

3.	A: Nǐ tàitai zài Xiānggǎng zhù duó jiǔ? 你太太在香港住多久?	How long is your wife staying in Hong Kong?
	B: Wǒ xiǎng tā zhù liǎngtiān. 我想她住两天。	I think she is staying two days.
4.	A: Nǐ xiǎng zhù duó jiǔ? 你想住多久?	How long are you thinking of staying?
	B: Wǒ xiǎng zhù yìnián. 我想住一年。	I'm thinking of staying one year.

The verb *xiǎng*, “to think that,” “to want to,” “would like to,” may be used as a main verb or as an auxiliary verb. As a main verb it means “to think that.” It is used this way in the answer of exchange 3 and in the following examples.

Wǒ xiǎng tā míngtiān lái. w 哦向他明天来。	I think he is coming tomorrow.
Wǒ xiǎng tā bú qù. 我想他不去。	I think he is not going.

When *xiǎng* is used as a main verb meaning “to think that,” it is not made negative. This may be a special problem for English speakers who are used to saying “I don’t think he is going.”

In Chinese, it is: “I think he is not going,” *Wǒ xiǎng tā bú qù*.

When *xiǎng* is used as an auxiliary verb, it means, “to want to,” “would like to.” It is used this way in exchange 4, which could also be translated as, “How long would you like to stay?”

Here are other examples:

Nǐ xiǎng zǒu ma? 你想走马?	Would you like to leave? OR Do you want to go?
Wǒ bù xiǎng zǒu. 我不想走。	I don’t want to leave.
Nǐ xiǎng zài Táiběi gōngzuò ma? 你想在台北工作马?	Do you want to work in Taipei?

Notes on №5-6

5. A: **Nǐ xiǎng zài Táiwān zhù duó jiǔ?** 你想在台湾住多久?
 B: **Wǒ xiǎng zhù bāge yuè.** 我想住八个月。
6. A: **Nǐ péngyou xiǎng zhù duó jiǔ?** 你朋友想住多久?
 B: **Tā xiǎng zhù liǎngge xīngqī.** 他想住两个星期。

How long are you thinking of staying in Taiwan?

I'm thinking of staying eight months.

How long is your friend thinking of staying?

He is thinking of staying two weeks.

You already know that **yìnián** and **yìtiān** are used without counters. The words for “month” and “week,” however, are used with counters.

Compare:

sāntiān	3 days
三天	
sānnián	3 years
三年	
sānge xīngqī	3 weeks
三个星期	
sānge yuè	3 months
三个月	

Notes on №7

7.	A: Nǐ lái le duó jiǔ le?	你来了多久了？	How long have you been there?
	B: Wǒ lái le sān tiān le.	我来了三天了。	I have been here three days.

le...le, “up until now,” “so far”: The use of completed-action le after the verb and of new-situation le after the duration phrase tells you how long the activity has been going on and that it is still going on. The answer could also have been translated “I have been here three days so far.” This pattern is sometimes called “double le.”

Notice that when le is in the middle of a sentence (in this case, because it is followed by a duration phrase), we write it attached to the verb before it: lái le duó jiǔ le.

Notes on №8

8. A: **Nǐ tàitai zài Xiānggǎng zhùle duó jiǔ?** 你太太在香港住了多久?
 B: **Tā zhùle liǎngtiān.** 她住了两天。
- How long did your wife stay in Hong Kong?
 She stayed two days.

Completion **le**: Here you see the marker **le** used to indicate one aspect, completion. Compare a sentence with one **le** to a sentence with two **le**'s:

Wǒ zài nàr zhùle sāntiān. 我在那儿住了三天。	I stayed there three days.
Wǒ zài nàr zhùle sāntiān le. 我在那儿住了三天了。	I have been here (stayed here) for three days now (so far).

Completion **le** is used with verbs that describe actions or processes, not with verbs that describe a state or condition, or a continuing situation. The following sentences, describing states or ongoing situations, have past-tense verbs in English but no **le** in Chinese.

Nèige shíhou tāmen zhǐ yǒu liǎngè háizi. 那个时候他们只有两个孩子。	At that time they had only two children.
Tā qùnián bú zài Shànghǎi, zài Běijīng. 他去年不在上海，在北京。	He wasn't in Shànghǎi last year; he was in Běijīng .

Verb types in Chinese: In studying some languages, it is important to learn whether a noun is masculine, feminine, or neuter. In Chinese, it is important to learn whether a verb is an action, state, or process verb. These three verb categories are meaning (semantic) groups. A verb is a member of one group or another depending on the meaning of the verb. For instance, "running" and "dancing" are actions; "being good" and "being beautiful" are states; and "getting sick" and "melting" are processes. In Chinese, grammatical rules are applied differently to each semantic verb category. For the most part, you have learned only action and state verbs in this course; so these comments will be confined to those two verb categories. (See Unit 8 of this module for process verbs.)

Action verbs: These are verbs which describe physical and mental activities. The easiest to classify are verbs of movement such as "walking," "running," and "riding", however, action verbs also include verbs with not too much motion, such as "working" and "writing," and verbs with no apparent motion, such as "studying." One test for determining if a verb is an action is asking "What did he do?" "He arrived," "He spoke," and "He listened" are answers which contain action verbs. "He knew" "He wanted" and "He is here" are answers which contain state verbs, not action verbs. Some of the action verbs you have learned are:

dào (to arrive)	lái (to come)
------------------------	----------------------

到	来
gōngzuò (to work)	zhù (to live, to stay)
工作	住

State verbs: These verbs describe qualities, conditions, and states. All adjectival verbs, such as **hǎo** “to be good,” and **jiǔ**, “to be long (in time),” are state verbs. Emotions, such as “being happy” and “being sad,” are expressed with state verbs. “Knowing,” “liking,” “wanting,” and “understanding,” which may be called mental states, are also expressed with state verbs. Also, all auxiliary verbs, such as **xiǎng**, “to want to,” “would like to,” are state verbs. Here are some of the state verbs:

dà to be large	shì to be
大	是
duì to be correct	jiào to be called
对	叫
xìng to be surnamed	zài to be at
性	在
xiǎng to want to	zhīdào to know
想	直到

Aspect and verb types: Not every aspect marker in Chinese may be used with all types of verbs. Completion **le** does not occur with state verbs. It does occur with action verbs.

ACTION	Tā yǐjīng dào le.	He has already arrived.
	他已经到了。	
	Tā gōngzuòle yìnián.	He worked one year.
	他工作了一年。	
	Tā lái le ma?	Did he come?
	他来了吗？	
STATE	Tā qùnián bú zài zhèr.	He wasn't here last year.
	他去年不在这儿。	
	Tā zuótiān xiǎng qù.	Yesterday he wanted to go.
	他昨天想去。	
	Tā zuótiān bú zhīdào.	He didn't know yesterday.
他昨天不知道。		

Notes on №9-10

9. A: Tā lái le ma? 他来了吗? Did he come?
 B: Lái le, tā lái le. 来了, 他来了。 Yes, he came.
10. A: Tā lái le ma? 他来了吗? Did he come?
 B: Méi lái, tā méi lái. 没来, 他没来。 No, he didn't come.

Compare the two possible interpretations of the question Tā lái le ma? and the answers they receive:

Completion le					
Tā		lái	le	ma?	Did she come?
他		来	了	马?	
Tā		lái	le.		She came.
他		来	了。		
Tā	méi	lái			She didn't come.
他	没	来。			

Combined le						
Tā			lái	le	ma?	Has he come?
他			来	了	马?	
Tā			lái	le.		She has come. OR She's here.
他			来	了。		
Tā	hái	méi	lái.			She hasn't come yet.
他	还	没	来。			

The first question, with completion le, asks only if the action took place. The second question, with combined le asks both whether the action has been completed and whether the resulting new situation still exists.

Notes on №11

11. A:	Nǐ cóngqián lái guo ma?	你从前来过吗？	Have you ever been here before?
B:	Wǒ cóngqián méi lái guo.	我从前没来过。	I have never been here before.

The aspect marker **-guo** means literally “to pass over,” “to cross over. The implication is that an event took place and then ceased at some time in the past.

It may help you to conceptualize **-guo** in terms of a bridge. The whole bridge is the event. The marker **-guo** stresses the fact that not only have you crossed over the bridge but at present you are no longer standing on it.

The meaning of **-guo** changes slightly depending on what type of verb it is used with: action or process, (**-guo** may not be used with state verbs.) With an action verb, **-guo** means that the action took place and then ceased at some time before the present. With a process verb, **-guo** means that the process took place and that the state which resulted from the process ended at some time before the present.

Remember that aspect markers like **le** and **-guo** are used only when the speaker feels it necessary to stress some feature or aspect of an event. **le** is used to stress finishing, or completion, **-guo** is used to stress that a situation occurred in the past and was “over” or “undone,” before the time of speaking (that is, the absence of that situation followed the situation).

Let’s contrast **-guo** with completion **le**: both **le** and **-guo** express completion, but **-guo** stresses that an action is no longer being performed, or that a state resulting from a process no longer exists.

For example, **Tā lái le.** means “He came,” or “He has come,” not indicating whether or not he is still there.

But **Tā lái guo** means “He came” with the specification that he is not there anymore—that is, he came and left.

One of the uses of the aspect marker **-guo**, is in sentences which express experience or having experienced something at least once in the past, that is, “to have had the experience of doing something.” This is how **-guo** is used in exchange 11. In a question, the marker **-guo** can be reflected by the English word “ever,” and in a negative statement by “never.”

Nǐ	cóngqián		lái	-guo	ma?	Have you ever been (come) here before?
你	从	天	来	过	吗？	
Nǐ	cóngqián	méi	lái	-guo		I have never been (come) here before.
你	从	天	没	来	过	
Nǐ	cóngqián		lái	-guo		I have been (come) here before
你	从	天	来	过		

The negative of **Tā lái le.** does not include a **le**, but the negative of **Tā lái guo.** does have a **-guo**. The negative adverb **méi** is used to negate both completion **le** and **-guo**.

Module 2: Biographic Information

Tā		lái	le.
他		来	了。
He came.			
Tā	méi	lái	
他	没	来	
He didn't come.			
Tā		lái	-guo.
他		来	过。
He came (He was here).			
Tā	méi	lái	-guo.
他	没	来	过。
He hasn't been here.			

Drills

Response drill

Respond according to the cue.

1. Zhāng xiānsheng zhù duó jiǔ?

张先生住多久？

How long is Mr. Zhāng staying?

Cue

yíge yuè

一个月

one month

Zhāng xiānsheng zhù yíge yuè.

张先生住一个月。

Mr. Zhāng is staying one month.

2. Wáng xiǎojiě zhù duó jiǔ?

王小姐住多久？

How long is Miss Wáng staying?

Cue

liǎngge xīnqī

两个星期

two weeks

Wáng xiǎojiě zhù liǎngge xīnqī.

王小姐住两个星期。

Miss Wáng is staying two weeks.

3. Hú tàitai zhù duó jiǔ?

胡太太住多久？

How long is Mrs. Hú staying?

Cue

sānge yuè

三个月

three months

Hú tàitai zhù sānge yuè.

胡太太住三个月。

Mrs. Hú is staying three months.

4. Tā zhù duó jiǔ?

他/她住多久？

How long is he/she staying?

Cue

sìge xīngqī

四个星期

four weeks

Tā zhù sìge xīngqī.

他/她住四个星期。

He/she is staying four weeks.

5. Tā tàitai zhù duó jiǔ?

他/她太太住多久？

How long is his wife staying?

Cue

liǎngge xīngqī

两个星期

two weeks

Tā tàitai zhù liǎngge xīngqī.

他太太住两个星期。

His wife is staying two weeks.

6. Lǐ xiǎojiě zhù duó jiǔ?

李小姐住多久？

How long is Miss Lǐ staying?

Cue

wǔge yuè

五个月

five months

Lǐ xiǎojiě zhù wǔge yuè.

李小姐住五个月。

Miss Lǐ is staying five months.

7. Tā xiānsheng zhù duó jiǔ?

她先生住多久？

How long is her husband staying?

Cue

liùge xīngqī

六个星期

six weeks

Tā xiānsheng zhù liùge xīngqī.

她先生住六个星期。

Her husband is staying six weeks.

Response drill

Respond according to the cue.

1. Zhāng tóngzhì zhù duó jiǔ?

张同志住多久？

How long is Comrade Zhāng staying?

Cue

sāntiān

三天

three days

Zhāng tóngzhì zhù sāntiān.

张同志住三天。

Comrade Zhāng is staying three days.

2. Tā mǔqīn zhù duó jiǔ?

他/她母亲住多久？

How long is his/her mother staying?

Cue

yìnián

一年

one year

Tā mǔqīn zhù yìnián.

他/她母亲住一年。

His/her mother is staying one year.

3. Tā fùqīn zhù duó jiǔ?

他/她父亲住多久？

How long is his/her father staying?

Cue

wǔtiān

五天

five days

Tā fùqīn zhù wǔtiān.

他/她父亲住五天。

His/her father is staying five days.

4. Wáng tóngzhì zhù duó jiǔ?

王同志住多久？

How long is Comrade Wáng staying?

Cue

bātiān

八天

eight days

Wáng tóngzhì zhù bātiān.

王同志住八天。

Comrade Wáng is staying eight days.

5. Nǐ jiějie zhù duó jiǔ?

李姐姐住多久？

How long is your older sister staying.

Cue

liǎngnián

两年

two years

Wǒ jiějie zhù liǎngnián.

我姐姐住两年。

My older sister is staying two years.

6. Hú tóngzhì zhù duó jiǔ?

胡同志住多久？

How long is Comrade Hú staying?

Cue

sìtiān

四天

four days

Hú tóngzhì zhù sìtiān.

胡同志之四天。

Comrade Hú is staying four days.

7. Tā zhù duó jiǔ?

他/他住多久？

How long is How long is he/she staying?

Cue

sānnián

三年
three years

Tā zhù sānnián.

他/他住三年。

He/she is staying three years.

Response drill

Respond according to the cue.

1. Tā mǔqīn zhù duó jiǔ?

他/她母亲住多久？

How long is his/her mother staying?

Cue

liǎngge yuè

两个月

two months

Tā mǔqīn zhù liǎngge yuè.

他/她母亲住两个月。

His/her mother is staying two months.

2. Tā mèimei zhù duó jiǔ?

他/她妹妹住多久？

How long is his/her younger sister staying?

Cue

yíge xīngqī

一个星期

one week

Tā mèimei zhù yíge xīngqī.

他/她妹妹住一个星期。

His/her younger sister is staying one week.

3. Zhāng tàitai zhù duó jiǔ?

张太太住多久？

How long is Mrs. Zhāng staying?

Cue

jiǔtiān

九天

nine days

Zhāng tàitai zhù jiǔtiān.

张太太住九天。

Mrs. Zhāng is staying nine days.

4. Tā gēge zhù duó jiǔ?

他/她哥哥住多久？

How long is his/her older brother staying?

Cue

sìge xīngqī

四个星期

four weeks

Tā gēge zhù sìge xīngqī.

他/她哥哥住四个星期。

His/her older brother is staying four weeks.

5. Wáng xiānsheng zhù duó jiǔ?

王先生住多久？

How long is Mr. Wáng staying?

Cue

yíge yuè

一个月

one month

Wáng xiānsheng zhù yíge yuè.

王先生住一个月。

Mr. Wáng is staying one month.

6. Tā dìdi zhù duó jiǔ?

他/她弟弟住多久？

How long is his/her younger brother staying?

Cue

yínián

一年

one year

Tā dìdi zhù yínián.

他/她弟弟住一年。

His/her younger brother is staying one year.

7. Tā jiějie zhù duó jiǔ?

他/她姐姐住多久？

How long is his/her older sister staying?

Cue

shítīān

十天
ten days

Tā jiějie zhù shítiān.

他/她姐姐住十天。

His/her older sister is staying ten days.

Expansion drill

Expand the response according to the model and the cue.

1. Zhāng tàitai de gēge zhù duó jiǔ?

张太太的哥哥住多久？

How long is Mrs. Zhāng's older brother staying?

Cue

Xiānggǎng

香港

Hong Kong

Zhāng tàitai de gēge zài xiānggǎng zhù duó jiǔ?

张太太的哥哥在香港住多久？

How long is Mrs. Zhāng's older brother staying in Hong Kong?

2. Jiāng xiānsheng de dìdi zhù duó jiǔ?

江先生的弟弟住多久？

How long is Mr. Jiāng's younger brother staying?

Cue

Guǎngzhōu

广州

Guǎngzhōu

Jiāng xiānsheng de dìdi zài Guǎngzhōu zhù duó jiǔ?

江先生的弟弟在广州多久？

How long is Mr. Jiāng's younger brother staying in Guǎngzhōu?

3. Zēng xiǎojiě de mèimei zhù duó jiǔ?

曾小姐的妹妹住多久？

How long is Miss Zēng's younger sister staying?

Cue

Zhōngguo

中国

China

Zēng xiǎojiě de mèimei zài Zhōngguó zhù duó jiǔ?

曾小姐的妹妹在中国住多久？

How long is Miss Zēng's younger sister staying in China?

4. Chén tóngzhì de jiějie zhù duó jiǔ?

陈同志的姐姐住多久？

How long is comrade **Chén**'s older sister staying?

Cue

Shānghǎi

上海

Shānghǎi

Chén tóngzhìde jiějie zài Shānghǎi zhù duó jiǔ?

陈同志的姐姐在上海住多久？

How long is comrade **Chén**'s older sister staying in **Shānghǎi**?

5. Qián tóngzhì de àiren zhù duó jiǔ?

钱同志的爱人住多久？

How long is comrade **Qián**'s spouse staying?

Cue

Měiguó

美国

America

Qián tóngzhìde àiren zài Měiguó zhù duó jiǔ?

钱同志的爱人在美国住多久？

How long is comrade **Qián**'s spouse staying in America?

6. Cáo xiǎojiě de fùqin zhù duó jiǔ?

曹小姐的父亲住多久？

How long is Miss **Cáo**'s father staying?

Cue

Qīngdǎo

青岛

Qīngdǎo

Cáo xiǎojiě de fùqin zài Qīngdǎo zhù duó jiǔ?

曹小姐的父亲在青岛住多久？

How long is Miss **Cáo**'s father staying in **Qīngdǎo**?

7. Xià xiāngsheng de mǔqin zhù duó jiǔ?

夏先生的母亲住多久？

How long is Mr. **Xià**'s mother staying?

Cue

Běijīng

北京
Běijīng

Xià xiāngshengde mǔqīn zài Běijīng zhù duō jiǔ?

夏先生的母亲在北京住多久？

How long is Mr. Xià's mother staying in Běijīng?

Transformation drill

Transform the sentence according to the model.

1. Tā zhù jǐtiān?

他/她住几天？

How many days is he/she staying?

Tā xiǎng zhù jǐtiān?

他/她想住几天？

How many days is he/she planning on staying?

2. Hú xiānsheng zhù jǐge yuè?

胡先生住几个月？

How many months is Mr. Hú staying?

Hú xiānsheng xiǎng zhù jǐge yuè?

胡先生想住几个月？

How many months is Mr. Hú planning on staying?

3. Wáng tàitai zhù jǐge xīngqī?

王太太住几个星期？

How many weeks is Mrs. Wáng staying?

Wáng tàitai xiǎng zhù jǐge xīngqī?

王太太想住几个星期？

How many weeks is Mrs. Wáng planning on staying?

4. Tā xiānsheng zhù jǐnián?

她先生住几年？

How many years is her husband staying?

Tā xiānsheng xiǎng zhù jǐnián?

她先生想住几年？

How many years is her husband planning on staying?

5. Zhōu xiǎojiě zhù jǐge yuè?

周小姐住几个月？

How many months is Miss Zhōu staying?

Zhōu xiǎojiě xiǎng zhù jǐge yuè?

周小姐想住几个月？

How many months is Miss Zhōu planning on staying?

6. Wǒ fùqin zhù jǐge xīngqī?

我父亲住几个星期？

How many weeks is my father staying?

Wǒ fùqin xiǎng zhù jǐge xīngqī?

我父亲想住几个星期？

How many weeks is my father planning on staying?

7. Tā mèimei zhù jǐtiān?

他/她妹妹住几天？

How many days is hi/her younger sister staying?

Tā mèimei xiǎng zhù jǐtiān?

他/她妹妹想住几天？

How many days is hi/her younger sister planning on staying?

Expansion drill

Expand the sentence according to the model.

1. Tā zhù yíge xīngqī.

他/她住一个星期。

He/she is staying one week.

Wǒ xiǎng tā zhù yíge xīngqī.

我想他/她住一个星期。

I think he/she is staying one week.

2. Tā zhù liǎngnián.

他/她住两年。

He/she is staying two years.

Wǒ xiǎng tā zhù liǎngnián.

我想他/她住两年。

I think he/she is staying two years.

3. Tā zhù sānge yuè.

他/她住三个月。

He/she is staying three months.

Wǒ xiǎng tā zhù sānge yuè.

我想他/她住三个月。

I think he/she is staying three months.

4. Tā zhù liǎngge xīngqī.

他/她住两个星期。

He/she is staying two weeks.

Wǒ xiǎng tā zhù liǎngge xīngqī.

我想他/她住两个星期。

I think he/she is staying two weeks.

5. Tā zhù qītiān.

他/她住七天。

He/she is staying seven days.

Wǒ xiǎng tā zhù qītiān.

我想他/她住七天。

I think he/she is staying seven days.

6. Tā zhù sìnián.

他/她住十年。

He/she is staying four years.

Wǒ xiǎng tā zhù sìnián.

我想他/她住十年。

I think he/she is staying four years.

7. Tā zhù liùge yuè.

他/她住六个月。

He/she is staying six months.

Wǒ xiǎng tā zhù liùge yuè.

我想他/她住六个月。

I think he/she is staying six months.

Transformation drill

Transform the sentence according to the model.

1. Tā zhù yíge xīngqī.

他/她住一个星期。

He/she is staying one week.

Tā zhùle yíge xīngqī.

他/她住了一个星期。

He/she stayed one week.

2. Mǎ tóngzhì zhù yìnián.

马同志住一年。

Comrade Mǎ is staying one year.

Mǎ tóngzhì zhùle yìnián.

马同志住了一年。

Comrade Mǎ stayed one year.

3. Wáng tóngzhì zhù sìge yuè.

王同志住四个月。

Comrade Wáng is staying four months.

Wáng tóngzhì zhùle sìge yuè.

王同志住了四个月。

Comrade Wáng stayed four months.

4. Zēng tóngzhì zhù wǔtiān.

曾同志住五天。

Comrade Zēng is staying five days.

Zēng tóngzhì zhùle wǔtiān.

曾同志住了五天。

Comrade Zēng stayed five days.

5. Wǒ zhù liǎngge xīngqī.

我住两个星期。

I'm staying two weeks.

Wǒ zhùle liǎngge xīngqī.

我住了两个星期。

I stayed two weeks.

6. Tā háizi zhù liùtiān.

他/她孩子住六天。

His/her children are staying six days.

Tā háizi zhùle liùtiān.

他/她孩子住了六天。

His/her children stayed six days.

7. Tā mèimei zhù liǎngnián.

他/她妹妹住两年。

His/her younger sister is staying two years.

Tā mèimei zhùle liǎngnián.

他/她妹妹住了两年。

His/her younger sister stayed two years.

Transformation drill

Transform the sentence according to the model.

1. Tā zhùle sāntiān.

他/她住了三天。

He/she stayed three days

Tā zhùle sāntiān le.

他/她住了三天了。

He/she has stayed three days.

2. Wǒ zhùle yíge xīngqī.

我住了一个星期。

I stayed one week.

Wǒ zhùle yíge xīngqī le.

我住了一个星期了。

I have stayed one week.

3. Tā fùqīn zhùle liǎngge yuè.

他/她父亲住了两个月。

His/her father stayed two months.

Tā fùqīn zhùle liǎngge yuè le.

他/她父亲住了两个月了。

His/her father has stayed two months.

4. Tā jiějie zhùle shíyītiān.

他/她姐姐住了十一天。

His/her older sister stayed eleven days.

Tā jiějie zhùle shíyītiān le.

他/她姐姐住了十一天了。

His/her older sister has stayed eleven days.

5. Wáng xiānsheng zhùle yìnián.

王先生住了一年。

Mr. Wáng stayed one year.

Wáng xiānsheng zhùle yìnián le.

王先生住了一年了。

Mr. Wáng has stayed one year.

6. Wáng tàitai zhùle sānge xīngqī.

王太太住了三个星期。

Mrs. Wáng stayed three weeks.

Wáng tàitai zhùle sānge xīngqī le.

王太太住了三个星期了。

Mrs. Wáng has stayed three weeks.

7. Hú xiǎojiě zhùle qītiān.

胡小姐住了七天。

Miss Hú stayed seven days.

Hú xiǎojiě zhùle qītiān le.

胡小姐住了七天了。

Miss Hú has stayed seven days.

Transformation drill

Respond by adding **xiǎng zhù**, or **zhùle** + duration phrase + **le** to each statement, according to the cue.

1. **Tā zhù yìtiān.**

他/她住一天。

He/she is staying one day.

Cue

hái měi lái

还没来

didn't come yet

Tā xiǎng zhù yìtiān.

他/她想住一天。

He/she is planning on staying one day.

2. **Tā zhù yìtiān.**

他/她住一天。

He/she is staying one day.

Cue

yǐjīng zǒu le

已经走了

already left

Tā zhùle yìtiān.

他/她住了一天。

He/she stayed one day.

3. **Tā zhù yìtiān.**

他/她住一天。

He/she is staying one day.

Cue

hái zài zhèr

还在这儿

already here

Tā zhùle yìtiān le.

他/她住了一天了。

He/she has stayed one day.

4. Tā zhù liǎngge xīngqī.

他/她住两个星期。

He/she is staying two weeks.

Cue yǐjīng zǒu le

已经走了

already left

Tā zhùle liǎngge xīngqī.

他/她住了两个星期。

He/she stayed two weeks.

5. Tā zhù sāntiān.

他/她住三天。

He/she is staying three days.

Cue hái méi lái

还没来

didn't come yet

Tā xiǎng zhù sāntiān.

他/她想住三天。

He/she is planning of staying three days.

6. Tā zhù yìnián.

他/她住一年。

He/she is staying one year.

Cue hái zài zhèr

还在这儿

already here

Tā zhùle yìnián le.

他/她住了一年了。

He/she has stayed one year.

7. Tā zhù wǔge xīngqī.

他/她住五个星期。

He/she is staying five weeks.

Cue yǐjīng zǒu le

已经走了
already left

Tā zhùle wǔge xīngqī.

他/她住了五个星期。

He/she stayed five weeks.

Transformation drill

Transform the sentence according to the model.

1. Tā xīngqīyī lái, xīngqīsān zǒu.

他/她星期一来，星期三走。

He/she is coming on Monday, leaving on Wednesday.

Tā xiǎng zhù liǎngtiān.

他/他想住两天。

He/she is planning on staying two days.

2. Tā yíyuè lái, sìyuè zǒu.

他/她一月来，四月走。

He/she is coming on January, leaving on April.

Tā xiǎng zhù sānge yuè.

他/她想住三个月。

He/she is planning on staying three months.

3. Tā wǔyuè lái, qíyuè zǒu.

他/她五月来，七月走。

He/she is coming on May, leaving on September.

Tā xiǎng zhù liǎngge yuè.

他/她想住两个月。

He/she is planning on staying four months.

4. Tā yíhào lái, liùhào zǒu.

他/她一号来，六号走。

He/she is coming the first of the month, leaving the sixth.

Tā xiǎng zhù wǔtiān.

他/她想住五天。

He/she is planning on staying five days.

5. Tā liùyuè lái, shíyuè zǒu.

他/她六月来，十月走。

He/she is coming on June, leaving on October.

Tā xiǎng zhù sìge yuè.

他/她想住四个月。

He/she is planning on staying four months.

6. Tā yījiǔqīliùnián lái, yījiǔqībānián zǒu.

他/她一九七六年来，一九七八年走。

He/she is coming in 1976, leaving in 1978.

Tā xiǎng zhù liǎngnián.

他/她想住两年。

He/she is planning on staying two years.

7. Tā xīngqīwǔ lái, xiàge xīngqīyī zǒu.

他/她星期五来，下个星期一走。

He/she is coming on Friday, leaving next Monday .

Tā xiǎng zhù sāntiān.

他/她想住三天。

He/she is planning on staying three days.

Transformation drill

Transform the sentence according to the model.

1. Tā shì èrhào láide, sìhào zǒude.

他/她是二号来的，四号走的。

He/she came on the second, left on the fourth.

Tā zhùle liǎngtiān.

他/她住了两天。

He/she stayed two days.

2. Tā shì yījiǔqīyīnián láide, yījiǔqīsìnián zǒude.

他/她是一九七一年来的，一九七四年走的。

He/she came in 1971, left in 1974.

Tā zhùle sānnián.

他/她住了三年。

He/she stayed three years.

3. Tā shì sānyuè láide, wǔyuè zǒude.

他/她是三月来的，五月走的。

He/she came in April , left in May.

Tā zhùle liǎngge yuè.

他/她住了两个月。

He/she stayed two months.

4. Tā shì xīngqīèr láide, xīngqīliù zǒude.

他/她是星期二来的，星期六走的。

He/she came on Tuesday , left on Saturday.

Tā zhùle sìtiān.

他/她住了四天。

He/she stayed four days.

5. Tā shì jiǔhào láide, shíyīhào zǒude.

他/她是九号来的，十一号走的。

He/she came on the ninth, left on the eleventh.

Tā zhùle liǎngtiān.

他/她住了两天。

He/she stayed two days.

6. Tā shì zuótiān lái de, jīntiān zǒu de.

他/她是昨天来的，今天走的。

He/she came yesterday , left today.

Tā zhù le yìtiān.

他/她住了一天。

He/she stayed one day.

7. Tā shì shàngge yuè sānshíyīhào lái de, zhèige yuè wǔhào zǒu de.

他/她是上个月三十一号来的，这个月五号走的。

He/she came the 31st last month, left on the 5th this month.

Tā zhù le wǔtiān.

他/她住了五天。

He/she stayed five days.

Transformation drill

Transform the sentence according to the model.

1. Tā míngtiān bù lái.

他/她明天不来。

He/she isn't coming tomorrow.

Cue

zuótiān

昨天

yesterday

Tā zuótiān méi lái.

他/她昨天没来。

He/she didn't come yesterday.

2. Tā hòutiān bù zǒu.

他/她后天不走。

He/she isn't leaving the day after tomorrow.

Cue

qiántiān

前天

the day before yesterday

Tā qiántiān méi zǒu.

他/她前天没走。

He/she didn't leave the day before yesterday.

3. Tā míngtiān bù lái.

他/她明天不来。

He/she isn't coming tomorrow.

Cue

qùnián

去年

last year

Tā qùnián méi lái.

他/她去年没来。

He/she didn't come last year.

4. Tā xiàge yuè bù zǒu.

他/她下个月不走。

He/she isn't leaving next month.

Cue

shàngge yuè

上个月

last month

Tā shàngge yuè méi zǒu.

他/她上个月没走。

He/she didn't leave last month.

5.

Tā xiàge xīngqī bù lái.

他/她下个星期不来。

He/she isn't coming next week.

Cue

shàngge xīngqī

上个星期

last week

Tā shàngge xīngqī méi lái.

他/她上个星期没来。

He/she didn't come last week.

6.

Tā hòutiān bù lái.

他/她后年不来。

He/she isn't coming the day after tomorrow.

Cue

qiánnián

前面

the day before yesterday

Tā qiánnián méi lái.

他/她前年没来。

He/she didn't come the day before yesterday.

7.

Tā jīntiān bù zǒu.

他/她今天不走。

He/she isn't leaving today.

Cue

jīntiān

今天
today

Tā jīntiān méi zǒu.

他/她今天没走。

He/she didn't leave today.

Transformation drill

Transform the sentence according to the model.

1. Tā lái le ma?

他/她来了吗?

Did he/she come?

Tā lái guo ma?

他/她来过吗?

Has he/she ever been here?

2. Tā ài ren lái le ma?

他/她爱人来了吗?

Did his/her spouse come?

Tā ài ren lái guo ma?

他/她爱人来过吗?

Has his/her spouse been here?

3. Tā mǔ qin lái le ma?

他/她母亲来了吗?

Did his/her mother come?

Tā mǔ qin lái guo ma?

他/她母亲来过吗?

Has his/her mother ever been here?

4. Hú tóng zhì lái le ma?

胡同志来了吗?

Did Comrade Hú come?

Hú tóng zhì lái guo ma?

胡同志来过吗?

Has Comrade Hú ever been here?

5. Tā dì dì lái le ma?

他/她弟弟来了吗?

Has his/her younger brother come?

Tā dì dì lái guo ma?

他/她弟弟来过吗？

Did his/her younger brother ever been here?

6. Wáng Dànián lái le ma?

王大年来了吗？

Did Wáng Dànián come?

Wáng Dànián lái guo ma?

王大年来过吗？

Has Wáng Dànián ever been here?

7. Zhào tóngzhì lái le ma?

赵同志来了吗？

Did Comrade Zhào come?

Zhào tóngzhì lái guo ma?

赵同志来过吗？

Has Comrade Zhào ever been here?

Response drill

Give a negative response to each question.

1. Wáng xiǎojiě lái le ma?

王小姐来了吗？

Did Miss Wáng come?

Wáng xiǎojiě méi lái.

王小姐没来。

Miss Wáng didn't come.

2. Lín xiānsheng lái le ma.

林先生来了吗？

Did Mr. Lín come?

Lín xiānsheng méi lái.

林先生没来。

Mr. Lín didn't come.

3. Liú tàitai lái le ma?

刘太太来了吗？

Did Mrs. Liú come?

Liú tàitai méi lái.

刘太太没来。

Mrs. Liú didn't come.

4. Tā lái le ma?

他/她来了吗？

Did he/she come?

Tā méi lái.

他/她没来。

He/she didn't come.

5. Huáng xiānsheng lái le ma?

黄先生来了吗？

Did Mr. Huáng come?

Huáng xiānsheng méi lái.

黄先生没来。

Mr. **Huáng** didn't come.

6. **Chén xiǎojiě lái le ma?**

陈小姐来了吗？

Did Miss **Chén** come?

Chén xiǎojiě méi lái.

陈小姐没来。

Miss **Chén** didn't come.

7. **Sūn tàitai lái le ma?**

孙太太来了吗？

Did Mrs. **Sūn** come?

Sūn tàitai méi lái.

孙太太没来。

Mrs. **Sūn** didn't come.

Response drill

Give a negative response to each question.

1. Tā lái guo ma?

他/她来过吗？

Has he/she ever been here?

Tā méi lái guo.

他/她没来过。

He/she has never been here.

2. Tā ài ren lái guo ma?

他/她爱人来过吗？

Has his/her spouse ever been here?

Tā ài ren méi lái guo.

他/她爱人没来过。

His/her spouse has never been here.

3. Tā nán hái zi lái guo ma?

他/她男孩子来过吗？

Has his/her boy ever been here?

Tā nán hái zi méi lái guo.

他/她男孩子没来过。

His/her boy has never been here.

4. Tā men hái zi dōu lái guo ma?

他们孩子都来过吗？

Have their children ever been here?

Tā men hái zi dōu méi lái guo.

他们孩子都没来过。

Their children have never been here.

5. Tā dì dì lái guo ma?

他/她弟弟来过吗？

Has his/her younger brother ever been here?

Tā dì dì méi lái guo.

他/她弟弟没来过。

His/her younger brother has never been here.

6. Tā jiějie lái guo ma?

他/她姐姐来过吗？

Has his/her older sister ever been here?

Tā jiějie méi lái guo.

他/她姐姐没来过。

His/her sister has never been here.

7. Tā mǔqin lái guo ma?

他/她母亲来过吗？

Has his/her mother ever been here?

Tā mǔqin méi lái guo.

他/她母亲没来过。

His/her mother has never been here.

Unit 7

Introduction

Topics covered in this unit

1. Where someone works.
2. Where and what someone has studied.
3. What languages someone can speak.
4. Auxiliary verbs.
5. General objects.

Material you will need

1. The C-1 and P-1 tapes, the Reference List and Reference Notes.
2. The C-2 and P-2 tapes, the Workbook.
3. The TD-1 tape.

References

Reference List

1. A: **Nǐn zài nǎlǐ gōngzuò?**
您在哪里工作？
Where do you work?
B: **Wǒ zài Měiguó Guówùyüàn gōngzuò.**
我在美国国务院工作。
I work with the State Department.
2. A: **Nǐn zài nǎlǐ gōngzuò?**
您在哪里工作？
Where do you work?
B: **Wǒ shì xüesheng.**
我是学生。
I'm a student.
3. A: **Nǐn lái zuò shénme?**
您来做什么？
What did you come here to do?
B: **Wǒ lái niàn shū.**
我来念书。
I came here to study.
4. A: **Òu, wǒ yě shì xüesheng.**
哦，我也是学生。
Oh, I'm a student too.
B: **Qǐngwèn, nǐ niàn shénme?**
请问，你念什么？
May I ask, what are you studying?
4. A: **Wǒ niàn lìshǐ.**
我念历史。
I'm studying history.
A: **Kē xiānsheng, nǐ niàn shénme?**
柯先生，你念什么？
What are you studying, Mr. Cook?
5. B: **Wǒ zài zhèlǐ xüé Zhōngwén.**
我在这里学中文。
I'm studying Chinese here.
6. B: **Qǐngwèn, nǐ xüéguo Yīngwén ma?**

7. A: Xüéguo
 B: Qǐngwèn, nǐ huì shuō Yīngwén ma?
 请问，你会说英文吗？
 May I ask, have you ever studied English?
 A: Wǒ huì shuō yìdiǎn.
 我会说一点。
 I can speak a little.
8. A: Nǐ tàitai yě huì shuō Zhōngguo huà ma?
 你太太也会说中国话吗？
 Can your wife speak Chinese too?
 B: Bú huì, tā bú huì shuō.
 不会，她不会说。
 No, she can't.
9. A: Nǐde Zhōngguo huà hěn hǎo.
 你的中国话很好。
 Your Chinese is very good.
 B: Náli, náli. Wǒ jiù shuō yìdiǎn.
 哪里，哪里。我就说一点。
 Not at all, not at all. I can speak only a little.
10. A: Nǐ shì zài nǎli xuéde?
 你是在哪里学的？
 Where did you study?
 B: Wǒ shì zài Huáshèngdùn xuéde.
 我是在华盛顿学的。
 I studied in Washington.
11. B: Nǐ shì zài dàxué xuéde Yīngwén ma?
 你是在大学学的英文吗？
 Did you study English at college?
 A: Shìde, wǒ shì zài Táiwān Dàxué xuéde Yīngwén.
 是的，我是在台湾大学学的英文。
 Yes, I studied English at Taiwan University.

Vocabulary

jīngxué	经学	Confucian classics
Rìwén	日文	Japanese language
wénxué	文学	literature
zhèngzhìxué	政治学	political science
nán	难	to be difficult
róngyì	容易	to be easy
dàxué	大学	university
huà	话	language, words
Huáshèngdùn	华盛顿	Washington
huì	会	to know how to, to can
jīngjìxué	经济学	economics
lìshǐ	历史	history
Měiguó Guówùyüàn	美国国务院	U.S. Department of State
nán	难	to be difficult
niàn (shū)	念书	to study
shuō (huà)	说话	to speak, to talk
xué	学	to study
xuéshēng (xuésheng)	学生	student
xuéxí (xuéxi)	学习	to study, to learn (PRC)
yìdiǎn	一点	a little
Yīngwén	英文	English
Zhōngwén	中文	Chinese
zuò	做	to do
shénme dìfang	什么地方	where, what place

Reference Notes

Notes on №1-2

- | | | | |
|----|-------------------------------------|------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. | A: Nín zài nǎlǐ gōngzuò? | 您在哪里工作？ | Where do you work? |
| | B: Wǒ zài Měiguó Guówùyüàn gōngzuò. | 我在美国国务院工作。 | I work with the State Department. |
| 2. | A: Nín zài nǎlǐ gōngzuò? | 您在哪里工作？ | Where do you work? |
| | B: Wǒ shì xuéshēng. | 我是学生。 | I'm a student. |

Zài Měiguó Guówùyüàn gōngzuò means either “work at the State Department” (i.e., at main State in Washington, D.C.) or “work in the organization of the State Department” (no matter where assigned). Here the expression is translated loosely as “work with the State Department,” meaning “in the organization.”

Notes on №3-4

3.	A: Nín lái zuò shénme?	您来做什 么？	What did you come here to do?
	B: Wǒ lái niàn shū.	我来念书。	I came here to study.
4.	A: Ò, wǒ yě shì xuésheng.	哦，我也是 学生。	Oh, I'm a student too.
	B: Qǐngwèn, nǐ niàn shénme?	请问，你念 什么？	May I ask, what are you studying?
	B: Wǒ niàn lìshǐ.	我念历史。	I'm studying history.

Purpose: When **lái**, “to come,” is followed by another verb, the second verb expresses the purpose of the subject’s coming. The “purpose of coming” may be emphasized by the **shi...de** construction, with the marker **shì** before the verb **lái**.

Wǒ shì lái niàn shūde.	I came to study.
我是来念书的。	

Niàn shū: **Niàn** by itself means “to read aloud.” When followed by an object, the expression means “to study.” **Shū** is “book(s),” but **niàn shū** simply means “to study.” **Shū** is used as a general object, standing for whatever is being studied.

Niàn lìshǐ: When you are talking about studying a particular subject, **niàn** is followed by the name of that subject rather than by the general object **shū**.

To have the meaning “to study,” **niàn** must be followed by either the general object **shū** or a specific object such as the name of a subject.

Verb types: **Zuò**, “to do,” and **niàn (shū)**, “to study,” are action verbs. Both are made negative with **bu** when referring to actions not yet finished. Both may take completion **le** or its negative **méi**.

Tā bú niàn shū.	He doesn't study.
他不念书。	
Tā méi niàn shū.	He didn't study.
他每年念书。	
Tā yǐjǐng niàn shù le.	He has already studied.
他已经念书了。	

Notes on №5-6

5.	A: Kē xiānsheng, nǐ niàn shénme?	柯先生，你念什么？	What are you studying, Mr. Cook?
	B: Wǒ zài zhèlǐ xué zhōngwén.	我在这里学中文。	I'm studying Chinese here.
6.	A: Qǐngwèn, nǐ xuéguo Yīngwén ma?	请问，你学过英文吗？	May I ask, have you ever studied English?
	B: Xuéguo	学过。	Yes.

Xué, “to study” an action verb): You will recognize **xué** from the word for “student,” **xuésheng**. **Xué** may refer to acquiring either knowledge or a skill. For example, you can **xué** history, economics, a language, piano, and tennis. On the other hand, **niàn** is used for “study” in the sense of taking a course or courses in a field of knowledge. **Niàn** is not used for a skill.

In some contexts, the verb **xué** means “to learn.” The following sentence may be interpreted two ways, depending on the situation.

Wǒ zài Měiguó yǐjīng xuéguo. 我在美国已经学过。	I learned it in America.(e.g., how to use chopsticks)
	OR
	I studied it in America. (e.g., the Chinese language)

Zhōngwén is used for either the Chinese spoken language or the written language, including literature. In general, use **xué** for “learning” to speak Chinese and **niàn** for “studying” Chinese literature.

Notes on №7-8

7.	A: Qǐngwèn, nǐ huì shuō Yīngwén ma?	请问, 你会说英文吗?	May I ask, can you speak English?
	B: Wǒ huì shuō yìdiǎn.	我会说一点。	I can speak a little.
8.	A: Nǐ tàitai yě huì shuō Zhōngguó huà ma?	你太太也会说中国话吗?	Can your wife speak Chinese too?
	B: Bú huì, tā bú huì shuō.	不会, 她不会说。	No, she can't.

Huì, “to know how to,” “can,” is an auxiliary verb. It is used before the main verb to express an attitude toward the action or to express the potential of action. Xiǎng, “to want to,” “would like to,” is also an auxiliary verb. “Should,” “must,” and “may” are other examples of auxiliary verbs. All auxiliary verbs in Chinese are state verbs, which means that bù is always used to make them negative. Auxiliary verbs never take the aspect marker le for completed action, regardless of whether you are talking about past, present, or future.

Tā qùnián bú huì shuō Yīngwén.	He couldn't speak English last year.
他去年不会说英文。	

When the marker le is used, it is the aspect marker for new situations.

Tā qùnián bú huì shuō Yīngwén, xiànzài huì le,	Last year he couldn't speak English, but now he can.
他去年不会说英文, 现在会了。	

Wǒ huì shuō yìdiǎn, “I can speak a little”: The word yìdiǎn, literally “a dot,” functions as a noun. It is used in a sentence to mean “a little bit” where a noun object, such as Yīngwén, “English,” might be used.

Yìdiǎn may not be used directly after an auxiliary verb, which must be followed by another verb.

Shuō, “to speak,” “to talk,” is another example of a verb which must always have an object. Shuō must be followed by either:

1. the general object huà, “words,” in which case the meaning of shuō huà is simply “to speak,” “to talk,” as in:

Tā hái méi shuō huà.	He hasn't yet spoken.
他还没说话。	

OR

2. a specific object such as the name of a language.

Bú huì: The short yes/no answer to a question containing the auxiliary verb **huì** is formed with **huì** rather than with the main verb.

Zhōngguo huà: This expression refers only to the spoken language, in contrast to **Zhōngwén**, which refers to both the spoken and written language.

Notes on №9

- | | | | | |
|----|----|---------------------------------|---------------|--|
| 9. | A: | Nǐ de Zhōngguó huà hěn hǎo. | 你的中国话很好。 | Your Chinese is very good. |
| | B: | Náli, náli. Wǒ jiù shuō yìdiǎn. | 哪里, 哪里。我就说一点。 | Not at all, not at all. I can speak only a little. |

Literally, **náli** means “where.” As a reply to a compliment, we have translated **náli** as “not at all.” In China, it has traditionally been considered proper and a matter of course to deny any compliment received, no matter how much truth there is to it. Many people still regard **xièxie** “thank you,” as an immodest reply to a compliment, since that would amount to agreeing that the compliment was completely correct.

Jiù, “only”: As was noted in Unit 3, notes on Nos. 8–9, **jiù** meaning “only” is not as widely understood as **zhǐ**. The last sentence in exchange 9 could just as well be **Wǒ zhǐ huì shuō yìdiǎn**.

Notes on №10-11

11. A: Nǐ shì zài dàxué xūéde Yīngwén ma? 你是在大学学的英文吗?
 B: Shìde, wǒ shì zài Táiwān Dàxué xūéde Yīngwén. 是的, 我是在台湾大学学的英文。
- Did you study English at college?
 Yes, I studied English at Taiwan University.

In the Peking dialect of Standard Chinese, which is the model for grammatical patterns presented in this course, the **-de** of a **shi...de** construction comes between the verb and its object. The object, therefore, is outside the **shi...de** construction. Compare “I studied here” with “I studied English here”:

However, you may hear some Standard Chinese speakers who place the object inside the **shi...de** construction.

Wǒ	shì	zài zhèr	xué	-de.	
我	是	在这儿	学	-的。	
Wǒ	shì	zài zhèr	xué	-de	Yīngwén.
我	是	在这儿	学	-的	英文。

Drills

Response drill

1. Tā zài nǎlǐ gōngzuò?
他/她在哪里工作?
Where does he/she work?

Cue Guówùyüàn
国务院
Department of State

Tā zài Guówùyüàn gōngzuò.
他/她在国务院工作。
He/she works with the Department of State.

2. Tā zài nǎlǐ gōngzuò?
他/她在哪里工作?
Where does he/she work?

Cue yóuzhèngjú
邮政局
post office

Tā zài yóuzhèngjú gōngzuò.
他/她在邮政局工作。
He/she works at the post office.

3. Tā zài nǎlǐ gōngzuò?
他/她在哪里工作?
Where does he/she work?

Cue yínháng
银行
bank

Tā zài yínháng gōngzuò.
他/她在银行工作。

He/she works at the bank.

4. Tā zài nǎlǐ gōngzuò?

他/她在哪里工作？

Where does he/she work?

Cue

Wǔguānchù

武官处

defense attache office

Tā zài Wǔguānchù gōngzuò.

他/她在武官处工作。

He/she works at the defense attache office.

5. Tā zài nǎlǐ gōngzuò?

他/她在哪里工作？

Where does he/she work?

Cue

Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn

国宾大饭店

Ambassador Hotel

Tā zài Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn gōngzuò.

他/她在国宾大饭店工作。

He/she works at the Ambassador Hotel.

5. Tā zài nǎlǐ gōngzuò?

他/她在哪里工作？

Where does he/she work?

Cue

Běijīng Dàfàndiàn

北京大饭店

Běijīng Grand Hôtel

Tā zài Běijīng Dàfàndiàn gōngzuò.

他/他在北京大饭店工作。

He/she works at the Běijīng Grand Hotel.

7. Tā zài nǎlǐ gōngzuò?

他/她在哪里工作？

Where does he/she work?

Cue

Mínzǔ Fàndiàn

民族饭店

Nationalities Hotel

Tā zài Mínzú Fàndiàn gōngzuò.

他/她在族饭店工作。

He/she works at the Nationalities Hotel.

Expansion drill

1. Tā shì xüesheng, tā xüé zhōngwén.
他/她是学生，他/她学中文。
He/she is a student, he/she studies Chinese.

Cue zhèli
这里
here

Tā shì xüesheng, tā zài zhèli xüé zhōngwén.
他/她是学生，他/她在这里学中文。
He/she is a student, he/she studies Chinese here.

2. Tā shì xüesheng, tā xüé zhōngguo huà.
他/她是学生，他/她学中国话。
He/she is a student, he/she studies Chinese.

Cue nàli
那里
there

Tā shì xüesheng, tā zài nàli xüé zhōngguo huà.
他/她是学生，他/她在那里学中国话。
He/she is a student, he/she studies Chinese there.

3. Tā shì xüesheng, tā nián shénme?
他/她是学生，他/她念什么？
He/she is a student, what does he/she study?

Cue zhèli
这里
here

Tā shì xüesheng, tā zài zhèli nián shénme?
他/她是学生，他/她在这里念什么？
He/she is a student, what does he/she study here?

4. Tā shì xüesheng, tā nián lishǐ.

他/她是学生，他/她念历史。

He/she is a student, he/she studies history.

Cue

náli?

哪里

where?

Tā shì xüesheng, tā zài náli nián lìshǐ?

他/她是学生，他/她在哪里念历史？

He/she is a student, where does he/she study history?

5.

Tā shì xüesheng, tā nián wénxüé.

他/她是学生，他/她念文学。

He/she is a student, he/she studies literature.

Cue

zhèli

这里

here

Tā shì xüesheng, tā zài zhèli nián wénxüé.

他/她是学生，他/她这里念文学。

He/she is a student, he/she studies literature here.

6.

Tā shì xüesheng, tā xüé fàwén.

他/她是学生，他/她学法文。

He/she is a student, he/she studies French.

Cue

nàli

那里

there

Tā shì xüesheng, tā zài nàli xüé fàwén.

他/她是学生，他/她在那里学法文。

He/she is a student, he/she studies French there.

7.

Tā shì xüesheng, tā xüé shénme?

他/她是学生，他/她学什么？

He/she is a student, what does he/she study?

Cue

zhèli

这里
here

Tā shì xuésheng, tā zài zhèlǐ xué shénme?

他/她是学生，他/她在这里学什么？

He/she is a student, what does he/she study here?

Response drill

1. Qǐngwèn, tā niàn shénme?

请问，他/她念什么？

May I ask, what is he/she studying?

Cue

jīngjixué

经济学

economics

Tā niàn jīngjixué.

他/她念经济学。

He/she studies economics.

2. Qǐngwèn, Wáng Dànián niàn shénme?

请问，王大年念什么？

May I ask, what is Wáng Dànián studying?

Cue

wénxué

文学

literature

Tā niàn wénxué.

他念文学。

He studies literature.

3. Qǐngwèn, Fāng xiǎojiě niàn shénme?

请问，方小姐念什么？

May I ask, what is Miss Fāng studying?

Cue

zhōngguó wénxué

中国文学

Chinese literature

Tā niàn zhōngguó wénxué.

她念中国文学。

She studies Chinese literature.

4. Qǐngwèn, tā mèimei niàn shénme?

请问，他/她妹妹念什么？

May I ask, what is his/her younger sister studying?

Cue

zhèngzhìxué

政治学

political science

Tā niàn zhèngzhìxué.

她念政治学。

She studies political science.

5. Qǐngwèn, tā àiren niàn shénme?

请问，他/她爱人念什么？

May I ask, what is his/her spouse studying?

Cue

lìshǐ

历史

history

Tā niàn lìshǐ.

他/她念历史。

He/she studies history.

6. Qǐngwèn, Sūn Huìrán niàn shénme?

请问，孙蕙然念什么？

May I ask, what is Sūn Huìrán studying?

Cue

zhōngguó lìshǐ

中国历史

Chinese history

Tā niàn Zhōngguó lìshǐ.

她念中国历史。

She studies Chinese history.

7. Tā nánháizi niàn shénme?

请问，他/她男孩子念什么？

May I ask, what is his/her boy studying?

Cue

jīngjìxüè

经济学
economics

Tā niàn jīngjixué.

他念经济学。

He/she studies economics.

Transformation drill

1. Wáng xiānsheng niàn lìshǐ.

王先生念历史。

Mr. Wáng is studying history.

Wáng xiānsheng lái niàn lìshǐ.

王先生来念历史。

Mr. Wáng is coming to study history.

2. Mǎ xiānsheng niàn wénxué.

马先生念文学。

Mr. Mǎ is studying literature.

Mǎ xiānsheng lái niàn wénxué.

先生来念文学。

Mr. Mǎ is coming to study literature.

3. Zhāng xiānsheng niàn jīngjìxué.

张先生念经济学。

Mr. Zhāng is studying economics.

Zhāng xiānsheng lái niàn jīngjìxué.

张先生来念经济学。

Mr. Zhāng is coming to study economics.

4. Lǐ xiānsheng niàn Rìwén.

李先生念日文。

Mr. Lǐ is studying the Japanese language.

Lǐ xiānsheng lái niàn Rìwén.

李先生来念日文。

Mr. Lǐ is coming to study the Japanese language.

5. Tā niàn lìshǐ.

他/她念历史。

He/she is studying history.

Tā lái niàn lìshǐ.

他/她来念历史。

He/she is coming to study history.

6. Hú xiānsheng niàn Yīngwén.

胡先生念英文。

Mr. Hú is studying English.

Hú xiānsheng lái niàn Yīngwén.

胡先生来念英文。

Mr. Hú is coming to study English.

7. Chén xiānsheng niàn Fàwén.

陈先生念法文。

Mr. Chén is studying French.

Chén xiānsheng lái niàn Fàwén.

陈先生来念法文。

Mr. Chén is coming to study French.

Response drill

1. Sūn tóngzhì lái zuò shénme?

孙同志来做什么？

What did Comrade Sūn come to do?

Cue

gōngzuò

工作

to work

Tā lái gōngzuò.

他/她来工作。

He/she is coming to work.

2. Mǎ tóngzhì lái zuò shénme?

马同志来做什么？

What did Comrade Mǎ come to do?

Cue

niàn shū

念书

to study

Tā lái niàn shū.

他/她来念书。

He/she is coming to study.

3. Chén tóngzhì lái zuò shénme?

陈同志来做什么？

What did Comrade Chén come to do?

Cue

xué rìwén

学日文

to study Japanese

Tā lái xué Rìwén.

他/她来学日文。

He/she is coming to study Japanese.

4. Tā lái zuò shénme?

他/她来做什么？

What did he/she come to do?

Cue

niàn lìshǐ

念历史

to study history

Tā lái niàn lìshǐ.

他/她来念历史。

He/she is coming to study history.

5. Huáng xiānsheng lái zuò shénme?

黄先生来做什么？

What did Mr. Huáng come to do?

Cue

niàn zhèngzhìxué

念政治学

to study political science

Tā lái niàn zhèngzhìxué.

他来念政治学。

He is coming to study political science.

6. Qián tóngzhì lái zuò shénme?

钱同志来做什么？

What did Comrade Qián come to do?

Cue

xué yīngwén

学英文

to study English

Tā lái xué Yīngwén.

他/她来学英文。

He/she did is coming to study English.

7. Tā lái zuò shénme?

他/她来做什么？

What did he/she come to do ?

Cue

gōngzuò

工作
to work

Tā lái gōngzuò.

他/她来工作。

He/she is coming to work.

Response drill

1. Qǐngwèn, tā lái niàn shū ma?

请问，他/她来念书吗？

May I ask, did he/she come to study?

Duì le, tā lái niàn shū.

对了，他/她来念书。

Yes, he/she came to study.

2. Qǐngwèn, tā lái niàn Zhōngwén ma?

请问他/她来念中文吗？

May I ask, did he/she come to study Chinese?

Duì le, tā lái niàn Zhōngwén.

对了，他/她来念中文。

Yes, he/she came to study Chinese.

3. Qǐngwèn, tā lái niàn jīngjixué ma?

请问，他/她来念经济学吗？

May I ask, did he/she come to study economics?

Duì le, tā lái niàn jīngjixué.

对了，他/她来念经济学。

Yes, he/she came to study economics.

4. Qǐngwèn, tā mèimei lái niàn Yīngwén ma?

请问他/她妹妹来念英文吗？

May I ask, did his/her younger sister come to study English?

Duì le, tā lái niàn Yīngwén.

对了，她来念英文。

Yes, she came to study English.

5. Qǐngwèn, Chén xiānsheng lái niàn zhèngzhixué ma?

请问，陈先生来念政治学吗？

May I ask, did Mr. Chén come to study political science?

Duì le, tā lái niàn zhèngzhixué.

对了，他来念政治学。

Yes, he came to study political science.

6. Qǐngwèn, Wáng xiānsheng lái xué Fàwén ma?

请问，王先生来学法文吗？

May I ask, did Mr. Wáng come to learn French?

Duì le, tā lái xué Fàwén.

对了，他来学法文。

Yes, he came to learn French.

7. Qǐngwèn, Zhāng xiǎojiě lái xué Rìwén ma?

请问，张小姐来学日文吗？

May I ask, did Miss Zhāng come to learn Japanese?

Duì le, tā lái xué Rìwén.

对了，她来学日文。

Yes, she came to learn Japanese.

Response drill

1. Tā shì zài dàxué xūede zhōngwén ma?

他/她是在大学学的中文吗？

Did he/she study Chinese in college?

Shìde, tā shì zài dàxué xūede Zhōngwén.

是的，他/她是在大学学的中文。

Yes, he/she studied Chinese in college.

2. Tā shì zài Měiguó xūede zhōngwén ma?

他/她是在美国学的中文吗？

Did he/she learn Chinese in America?

Shìde, tā shì zài Měiguó xūede Zhōngwén.

是的，他/她是在美国学的中文。

Yes, he/she learned Chinese in America.

3. Tā shì zài Táiwān Dàxué niànde yīngwén ma?

他/她是在台湾大学念的英文吗？

Did he/she study English in Taiwan?

Shìde, tā shì zài Táiwān Dàxué niànde Yīngwén.

是的，他/她是在台湾大学念的英文。

Yes, he/she studied English in Taiwan.

4. Tā shì zài Měiguó niànde lìshǐ ma?

他/她是在美国念的历史吗？

Did he/she study history in America?

Shìde, tā shì zài Měiguó niànde lìshǐ.

是的，他/她是在美国念的历史。

Yes, he/she studied history in America.

5. Tā shì zài Jiāzhōu niànde zhèngzhixué ma?

他/她是在加州念的政治学吗？

Did he/she study political science in California?

Shìde, tā shì zài Jiāzhōu niànde zhèngzhixué.

是的，他/她是在加州念的政治学。

Yes, he/she studied political science in California.

6. Tā shì zài Zhōngguó niànde Zhōngguó wénxué ma?

他/她是在中国念的中国文学吗？

Did he/she study Chinese literature in China?

Shìde, tā shì zài Zhōngguó niànde Zhōngguó wénxué.

是的，他/她是在中国念的中国文学。

Yes, he/she studied Chinese literature in China.

7. Tā shì zài Huáshèngdùn niànde jīngjixué ma?

他/她是在华盛顿念的经济学吗？

Did he/she study economics in Washington?

Shìde, tā shì zài Huáshèngdùn niànde jīngjixué.

是的，他/她是在华盛顿念的经济学。

Yes, he/she studied economics in Washington.

Note

All these sentences could be translated with “is coming” instead of “did come”.

Response drill

Give negative responses to all the questions, and complete your answers according to the cues.

1. Tā shì zài Zhōngguó xuéde Zhōngguó huà ma?

他/她是在中国学的中国话吗？

Did he/she study Chinese in China?

Cue

Měiguó

美国

America

Bú shì, tā shì zài Měiguó xuéde Zhōngguó huà.

不是，他/她是在美国学的中国话。

No, he/she studied Chinese in America.

2. Tā shì zài Měiguó niànde Fàwén ma?

他/她是在美国念的法文吗？

Did he/she study French in America.

Cue

Jiānádà

加拿大

Canada

Bú shì, tā shì zài Jiānádà niànde Fàwén.

不是，他/她是在加拿大念的法文。

No, he/she studied French in Canada.

3. Tā shì zài Táiwān Dàxué niànde zhēngzhixué ma?

他/她是在台湾大学念的政治学吗？

Did he/she study political science at Taiwan University?

Cue

Měiguó Dàxué

美国大学

American University

Bú shì, tā shì zài Měiguó Dàxué niànde zhèngzhixué.

不是，他/她是在美国大学念的政治学。

No, he/she studied political science in American University.

4. Tā shì zài Yīngguó niànde Yīngguó wénxué ma?

他/她是在英国念的英国文学吗？

Did he/she study English literature in England?

Cue Měiguó Dàxué

美国大学

American University

Bú shì, tā shì zài Měiguó Dàxué niànde Yīngguó wénxué.

不是，他/她是在美国大学念的英国文学。

No, he/she studied English literature in American University.

5. Tā shì zài Jiāzhōu niànde jīngjixué ma?

他/她是在加州念的经济学吗？

Did he/she study economics in California?

Cue Táiwān Dàxué

台湾大学

Taiwan University

Bú shì, tā shì zài Táiwān Dàxué niànde jīngjixué.

不是，他/她是在台湾大学念的经济学。

No, he/she studied economics in a Taiwan University.

6. Tā shì zài Zhōngguó niànde Zhōngguó lìshǐ ma?

他/她是在中国念的中国历史吗？

Did he/she study Chinese history in China?

Cue Jiāzhōu Dàxué

加州大学

University of California

Bú shì, tā shì zài Jiāzhōu Dàxué niànde Zhōngguó lìshǐ.

不是，他/她是在加州大学念的中国历史。

No, he/she studied Chinese history in the California university.

7. Tā shì zài Jiānádà niànde Zhōngwén ma?

他/她是在加拿大念的中文吗？

Did he/she study the Chinese language in Canada?

Cue

Táiwān

台湾

Taiwan

Bú shì, tā shì zài Táiwān niànde Zhōngwén.

不是，他/她是在台湾念的中文。

No, he/she studied the Chinese language in Taiwan.

Response drill

Give negative or affirmative responses to all the questions according to the cues.

1. Tā shì zài Huáshèngdùn xuéde Zhōngguó huà ma?

他/她是在华盛顿学的中国话吗？

Did he/she study Chinese in Washington?

Cue Huáshèngdùn

华盛顿

Washington

Shìde, tā shì zài Huáshèngdùn xuéde Zhōngguó huà.

是的，他/她是在华盛顿学的中国话。

he/she studied Chinese in Washington.

2. Tā shì zài Táiwān Dàxué niànde Zhōngguó lìshǐ ma?

他/她是在台湾大学念的中国历史吗？

Did he/she study Chinese history in Taiwan University?

Cue Měiguó Dàxué

美国大学

American University

Bú shì, tā shì zài Měiguó Dàxué niànde Zhōngguó lìshǐ.

不是，他/她是在美国大学念的中国历史。

No, he/she studied Chinese history at American University.

3. Tā shì zài dàxué xuéde Zhōngwén ma?

他/她是在大学学的中文吗？

Did he/she learn Chinese in college?

Cue dàxué

大学

college

Shìde, tā shì zài dàxué xuéde Zhōngwén.

是的，他/她是在大学学的中文。

Yes, he/she learned Chinese in college.

4. Tā shì zài Táiwān Dàxué niànde Zhōngguó wénxué ma?

他/她是在台湾大学念的中国文学吗？

Did he/she study Chinese literature at Taiwan University?

Cue Jiāzhōu Dàxué

加州大学

University of California

Bú shì, tā shì zài Jiāzhōu Dàxué niànde Zhōngguó wénxué.

不是，他/她是在加州大学念的中国文学。

No, he/she studied Chinese literature at the University of California.

5. Tā shì zài Měiguó Dàxué niànde wénxué ma?

他/她是在美国大学念的文学吗？

Did he/she study literature at American University?

Cue Měiguó Dàxué

美国大学

American University

Shìde, tā shì zài Měiguó Dàxué niànde wénxué.

是的，他/她是在美国大学念的文学。

Yes, he/she studied literature at American University

6. Tā shì zài Jiāzhōu Dàxué niànde zhèngzhixué ma?

他/她是在加州念的政治学吗？

Did he/she study political science at the University of California?

Cue Táiwān Dàxué

台湾大学

University of Taiwan

Bú shì, tā shì zài Táiwān Dàxué niànde shèngzhixué.

不是，他/她是在台湾大学念的政治学。

No, he/she studied political science at Taiwan University.

7. Tā shì zài Fàguó niànde Fàwén ma?

他/她是在法国念的法文吗？

Did he/she study French in France?

Cue

Měiguó

美国

America

Bú shì, tā shì zài Měiguó niànde Fàwén.

不是，他/她是在美国念的法文。

No, he/she studied French in University of America.

Substitution drill

1. Nǐ huì shuō Yīngwén ma?

你会说英文吗？

Can you speak English?

Cue

Déwén

德文

German

Nǐ huì shuō Déwén ma?

你会说德文吗？

Can you speak German?

2. Nǐ huì shuō Déwén ma?

你会说德文吗？

Can you speak German?

Cue

Rìwén

日文

Japanese

Nǐ huì shuō Rìwén ma?

你会说日文吗？

Can you speak Japanese?

3. Nǐ huì shuō Rìwén ma?

你会说日文吗？

Can you speak Japanese?

Cue

Fàwén

法文

French

Nǐ huì shuō Fàwén ma?

你会说法文吗？

Can you speak French?

4. Nǐ huì shuō Fàwén ma?

Combination drill

1. Wǒ xué Zhōngwén.
我学中文。
I'm studying Chinese.

Cue Rìwén
日文
Japanese

Wǒ xué Zhōngwén, wǒ yě xué Rìwén.
我学中文，我也学日文。
I'm studying Chinese, and I'm studying Japanese too.

2. Wǒ xué Fàwén.
我学法文。
I'm studying French.

Cue tā
他/她
he/she

Wǒ xué Zhōngwén, tā yě xué Zhōngwén.
我学中文，他/她也学中文。
I'm studying French, and he/she is studying Chinese too.

3. Tā xué Fàwén.
他/她学法文。
He/she is studying French.

Cue Déwén
德文
German

Tā xué Fàwén, tā yě xué Déwén.
他/她学法文，他/她也学德文。
He/she is studying French, and he/she is studying German too.

4. Wǒ xué Fàwén.

历史
history

Wǒ xué wénxué, wǒ yě xué lìshǐ.

我学文学，我也学历史。

I'm studying literature, and I'm studying history too.

Combination drill

- Lín xiānsheng zài Huáshèngdùn. Tā xuéguo Fàwén.
林先生在华盛顿。他学过法文。
Mr. Lín was in Washington. He studied French.

Lín xiānsheng zài Huáshèngdùn xuéguo Fàwén.
林先生在华盛顿学过法文。
Mr. Lín studied French in Washington.
- Huáng xiǎojiě zài Měiguó. Tā niànguo zhèngzhixué.
黄小姐在美国。她念过政治学。
Miss Huáng was in America. She studied political science.

Huáng xiǎojiě zài Měiguó niànguo zhèngzhixué.
黄小姐在美国念过政治学。
Miss Huáng studied political science in America.
- Liú tàitai zài Jiāzhōu Dàxué. Tā niànguo jīngjixué.
刘太太在加州大学。她念过经济学。
Mrs. Liú was in the University of California. She studied economics.

Liú tàitai zài Jiāzhōu Dàxué niànguo jīngjixué.
刘太太在加州大学念过经济学。
Mrs. Liú studied economics at the University of California.
- Sòng xiānsheng zài Měiguó. Tā niànguo lìshǐ.
宋先生在美国。他念过历史。
Mr. Sòng was in America. He studied history.

Sòng xiānsheng zài Měiguó niànguo lìshǐ.
宋先生在美国念过历史。
Mr. Sòng studied history in America.
- Tā zài Běijīng. Tā xuéguo Zhōngwén.
他/她在北京。他/她学过中文。
He/she was in Běijīng. He/she learned Chinese.

Tā zài Běijīng xuéguo zhōngwén.

他/她在北京学过中文。

He/she learned Chinese in Běijīng.

6. Sūn xiǎojiě zài Jiānádà. Tā niànguo Yīngguo wénxué.

孙小姐在加拿大。他念英国文学。

Miss Sūn was in Canada. She studied English.

Sūn xiǎojiě zài Jiānádà niànguo Yīngguo wénxué.

孙小姐在加拿大念过英国文学。

Miss Sūn studied English in Canada.

7. Tā zài Zhōngguo. Tā niànguo Zhōngguo wénxué.

他/她在中国。他/她念过中国文学。

He/she was in China. He/she studied Chinese literature.

Tā zài Zhōngguo niànguo Zhōngguo wénxué.

他/她在中国念过中国文学。

He/she studied Chinese literature in China.

Response drill

Give an affirmative or a negative response to each question, according to the cues.

1. Nǐ huì shuō Yīngwén ma?

你会说英文吗？

Can you speak English?

Cue

xuéguo

学过

have studied

Wǒ huì shuō yìdiǎn.

我会说一点。

I can speak a little.

2. Nǐ huì shuō Yīngwén ma?

你会说英文吗？

Can you speak English?

Cue

méi xuéguo

没学过

haven't studied

Wǒ bú huì shuō.

我不会说。

I can't speak it.

3. Nǐ huì shuō Zhōngwén ma?

你会说中文吗？

Can you speak Chinese?

Cue

xuéguo

学过

have studied

Wǒ huì shuō yìdiǎn.

我会说一点。

I can speak Chinese a little.

4. Tā huì shuō Déwén ma?

他/她会说法文吗？

Can he/she speak German?

Cue

méi xuéguo

没学过

haven't studied

Tā bù huì shuō.

他/她不会说。

He cannot speak it.

5. Nǐ huì shuō Rìwén ma?

你会说日文吗？

Can you speak Japanese?

Cue

xuéguo

学过

have studied

Wǒ huì shuō yìdiǎn.

我会说一点。

I can speak Japanese a little.

6. Tā huì shuō Yīngguo huà ma?

他/她会说英国话吗？

Can he/she speak English?

Cue

xuéguo

学过

have studied

Tā huì shuō yìdiǎn.

他/她会说一点。

He/she can speak a little.

7. Nǐ huì shuō Fàwén ma?

你会说法文吗？

Can you speak French?

Cue

méi xuéguo

没学过

haven't studied

Wǒ bú huì shuō.

我不会说。

I cannot speak it.

Response drill

Give an affirmative or a negative response to each question, according to the cues.

1. Tā huì shuō Zhōngguó huà ma?

他/她会讲中国话吗？

Can he/she speak Chinese?

Cue

xuéguo

学过

have studied

Huì, tā huì shuō Zhōngguó huà.

会，他/她会讲中国话。

Yes, he/she can speak Chinese.

2. Tā huì shuō Zhōngguó huà ma?

他/她会讲中国话吗？

Can he/she speak Chinese?

Cue

méi xuéguo

没学过

haven't studied

Bú huì, tā bú huì shuō Zhōngguó huà.

不会，他/她会讲中国话。

No, he/she cannot speak Chinese.

3. Tā àiren huì shuō Fàwén ma?

他/她爱人会说法文吗？

Can his/her spouse speak French?

Cue

xuéguo

学过

have studied

Huì, tā àiren huì shuō Fàwén.

会，他/她爱人会说法文。

Yes, his/her spouse can speak French.

Cue

xuéguo

学过

have studied

Huì, Chén tóngzhì huì shuō Fàwén.

会，陈同志会说法文。

Yes, Comrade Chén can speak French.

Unit 8

Introduction

Topics covered in this unit

1. More on duration phrases.
2. The marker **le** for new situations in negative sentences.
3. Military titles and branches of service.
4. The marker **ne**.
5. Process verbs.

Material you will need

1. The C-1 and P-1 tapes, the Reference List and Reference Notes.
2. The C-2 and P-2 tapes, the Workbook.
3. The 8D-1 tape.

References

Reference List

1. A: **Nǐ jīntiān hái yǒu kè ma?**
你今天还有课吗？
Do you have any more classes today?
B: **Měiyǒu kè le.**
没有课了。
I don't have any more classes.
2. A: **Nǐ cóngqián niàn Yīngwén niànle duó jiǔ?**
你从前念英文念了多久？
How long did you study English?
B: **Wǒ niàn Yīngwén niànle liùnián.**
我念英文念了六年。
I studied English for six years.
3. A: **Nǐ xiànzài niàn shénme ne?**
你现在念什么呢？
What are you studying now?
B: **Wǒ niàn Fàwén ne.**
我念法文
I'm studying French.
4. A: **Nǐ niàn Fàwén niànle duó jiǔ le?**
你念法文了多久了？
How long have you studying French?
B: **Wǒ niànle yìnián le.**
我念了一年了。
I've have been studying it for one year.
5. A: **Nǐ huì xiě Zhōngguó zì ma?**
你会写中国字吗？
Can you write Chinese characters?
B: **Huì yìdiǎn.**
会一点。
I can a little.
6. A: **Qùnián wǒ hái bú huì xiě.**
去年我还不会写。
Last year, I couldn't write them.
A: **Xiànzài wǒ huì xiě yìdiǎn le.**

7. A: 现在我会写一点了。
Now, I can write a little.
Nǐ fùqīn shì jūnrén ma?
你父亲是军人吗?
Is your father a military man?
B: Shì, tā shì hǎijūn jūnguān.
是，他是海军军官。
Yes, he is a naval officer.
8. B: Wǒ jīntiān bù lái le.
我今天不来了。
I'm not coming today.
B: Wǒ bìng le.
我病了。
I'm sick.
9. A: Jīntiān hǎo le méiyǒu?
今天好了没有?
Are you better today? (Are you recovered?)
B: Jīntiān hǎo le.
今天好了。
Today I'm better.

Vocabulary

kōngjūn	空军	Air Force
lùjūn	陆军	army
shìbīng	事兵	enlisted man
zuò shì	做事	to work
Déwén	德文	German language
bìng	病	to become ill
Déwén	德文	German language
Fàwén	法文	French language
hǎijūn	海军	navy
jūnguān	军官	military officer
jūnrén	军人	military person
kè	课	class
xiě	写	to write
zì	字	character

Reference Notes

Notes on №1

1. A: **Nǐ jīntiān hái yǒu kè ma?** 你今天还有课吗? Do you have any more classes today?
 B: **Měiyǒu kè le.** 没有课了。 I don't have any more classes.

Hái, “additionally,” “also”: You have already learned the word **hái** used as an adverb meaning “still.” In this exchange you learn a second way to use **hái**.

Nǐ hái xiǎng zǒu ma?	Do you still want to leave?
你还想走吗?	
Nǐ hái yào xué shénme?	What else do you want to study?
你还要学什么?	

Méi you...le: You will remember that in the negative of a completed action, **méi** or **méiyǒu** replaces the completion marker **le**—is never used together with it.

Tā		lái	le.	He came.
他		来	了。	
Tā	méi(y-ou)	lái.		He did not come.
他	没有	来		

In the sentence **Méiyǒu kè le**, **le** is a new-situation marker, and **méiyǒu** is simply the negative of the full verb **yǒu**. (Remember that the verb **yǒu** is always made negative with **méi**, never with **bù**.)

Tā		yǒu kè	le.	Now he has class. [Due to a change in the schedule, he now has class at this time.]
他		有课	了。	
Tā	méi-	yǒu kè	le.	He doesn't have any more classes.
他	没	有课	了。	

Bù...le/méiyǒu...le: When the marker **le** for new situations is used with a negative verb, there are two possible meanings:

- one is that something that was supposed to happen is now not going to happen.
- the other is that something that was happening is not happening anymore.

Thus the following sentence is ambiguous:

Tā bù lái le.	He is not coming now. [Either he was expected to come but changed his mind, or he used to come at this time but now has stopped.]
他不来了。	

In the context of a conversation, the meaning of the sentence would become clear.

Here are more examples with the “anymore” meaning:

Tā bú niàn shū le. 他不念书了。	He is not going to study anymore.[He will no longer attend college.]
Tā bú shì wǒ de péngyou le. 他不是我的朋友了。	
Méi you le. 没有了。	He is not my friend anymore.
	There is no more.

Notes on №2

2.	A: Nǐ cóngqián niàn Yīngwén niànle duó jiǔ?	你从前念英文念了多久?	How long did you study English?
	B: Wǒ niàn Yīngwén niànle liùnián.	我念英文念了六年。	I studied English for six years.

More on duration: In Unit 6 of this module, you learned to express duration in a sentence with no object (**Wǒ zài Xiāngǎng zhùle liùge yuè le.**). In this unit, you learn one way to express the duration of an activity which involves using both a verb and an object (e.g. “studying economics”). In such cases, the verb appears twice in the sentence: first when the object is stated, and again when the duration is stated.

Tā niàn jīngjixué, niànle yìnián.	He studied economics for one year.
他念经济学，念了一年了。	
Tā xué Zhōngguó huà, xuéle sānge yuè le.	He has been studying Chinese for three months.
他学中国画，学了三个月了。	

Notice that aspect markers do not occur after the first verb in each sentence, but only after the second verb and at the end of the second sentence.

Notes on №3

- | | | | | |
|----|----|-------------------------------|--------------|-------------------------------|
| 3. | A: | Nǐ xiànzài niàn shénme
ne? | 你现在念什
么呢？ | What are you studying
now? |
| | B: | Wǒ niàn Fàwén ne. | 我念法文 | I'm studying French. |

Ne is an aspect marker used to emphasize the fact that something is in progress. With action verbs, **ne** indicates that the action is going on.

With state verbs, **ne** shows that the state exists. With some process verbs, **ne** indicates that the process is going on. **Ne** may not be used with certain process verbs. (See also notes on No. 8, about verbs.)

Notes on №4-5

- | | | | | |
|----|----|----------------------------------|------------|--|
| 4. | A: | Nǐ niàn Fàwén niànle duó jiǔ le? | 你念法文念了多久了? | How long have you studying French? |
| | B: | Wǒ niànle yìnián le. | 我念了一年了。 | I've have been studying it for one year. |
| 5. | A: | Nǐ huì xiě Zhōngguó zì ma? | 你会写中国字吗? | Can you write Chinese characters? |
| | B: | Huì yìdiǎn. | 会一点。 | I can a little. |

Xiě Zhōngguó zì: The verb **xiě**, “to write” can occur with specific objects, such as **Zhōngguó zì**, as well as with the general object **zì**. The combination **xiě zì** can mean either “to write characters” or simply “to write.”

Tā xiǎng xué Zhōngguó zì. 他想学中国字。	He wants to learn to write Chinese characters.
Xiǎo dìdì sìsuì le, yǐjīng huì xiě zì le. 小弟弟四岁了，已经会写字了。	Little younger brother is four years old and already can write.

In the reply **Huì yìdiǎn**, **huì** is used as a main verb—not as an auxiliary verb, as in the question.

As a main verb, **huì** means “to have the skill of,” “to have the knowledge of,” “to know.”

Wǒ huì Yīngwén. 我会英文。	I know English.
--------------------------	-----------------

Notes on №6

- | | | | |
|----|----|---|--------------------------------------|
| 6. | A: | Qùnián wǒ hái bú huì xiě. 去年我还不
会写。 | Last year, I couldn't write
them. |
| | B: | Xiànzài wǒ huì xiě yìdiǎn le. 现在我会写
一点了。 | Now, I can write a little. |

Qùnián wǒ hái bú huì xiě.: Notice that here it is the auxiliary verb **huì**, not the verb **xiě**, that is made negative. Auxiliary verbs such as **huì** and **xiǎng** are STATE verbs and so are made negative with the prefix **bù**, regardless of whether the context is past, present, or future.

Xiànzài wǒ huì xiě yìdiǎn le.: The marker used is **le** for new situations. It is always placed at the end of a sentence.

The time word **xiànzài** comes at the beginning of the sentence here. Most time words of more than one syllable may come either before or after the subject, but in either case before the verb.

Notes on №7-8

7.	A: Nǐ fùqīn shì jūnrén ma? 你父亲是军人吗?	Is your father a military man?
	B: Shì, tā shì hǎijūn jūnguān. 是, 他是海军军官。	Yes, he is a naval officer.
8.	A: Wǒ jīntiān bù lái le. 我今天不来了。	I'm not coming today.
	B: Wǒ bìng le. 我病了。	I'm sick.

The verb **bìng**, “to get sick,” “to become ill,” is a process verb; that is the activity described includes some changes in the situation. Process verbs tell of an action which has caused a change from one state to another, as from whole to broken (“to break”) and from frozen to melted (“to melt”). **Bìng** is typical of process verbs: not only is an action described (coming down with an illness) but also a resulting state (being ill). Because of this typical combination, process verbs are sometimes thought of as combining the semantic characteristics of action and state verbs.

One of the main purposes of talking about verbs in terms of action, state, and process is to draw attention to the fact that the Chinese way of expressing something may not correspond to the English.

For instance,

“I am sick” in Chinese is **Wǒ bìng le**. (“I have gotten sick”). For “I am not sick,” you say **Wǒ méi bìng**. (“I didn’t get sick”).

Process verbs are always made negative with **méi** regardless of whether you are referring to past, present, or future.

Nǐ bìng le méiyǒu?	Are you sick?
你病了没有?	
Méiyǒu. Wǒ méi bìng.	No. I’m not sick.
没有。我没病。	

(State verbs are always made negative with **bù**.)

Another reason for putting verbs into categories according to the type of meaning is to discover how verbs behave in sentences. Knowing whether a verb is in the action, state, or process category, you will know what aspect markers and negatives may be used with that verb. In the following charts, an X mark means that this combination of verb and aspect occurs in the language.

		Aspect Markers		
		Completion le	Combined le	New-situation le
Verbs	Action	X	X	X
	State			X
	Process	X	X	X

Examples:⁶

Action	Tā zuótiān gōngzuò le. 他昨天工作了。	He worked yesterday. (completion le)
	Tā yǐjīng lái le. 他已经来了。	
	Gēge xiànzài niàn dàxué le. 哥哥现在年大学了。	Older brother goes to college now. (new-situation le) ^a
State	Tā xiànzài huì xiě zì le. 他现在会写字了。	He can write now. (new-situation le)
Process	Tā zuótiān bìng le. 他昨天病了。	He got sick yesterday. (completion le)
	Tā xiànzài bìng le. 他现在病了。	
	Tā bìngle yíge yuē le. 他病了一个月了。	He has been sick for one month now. (new-situation le) and completion le)

^aIn affirmative sentences containing action verbs, the marker **le** for new situations is used to describe a change in a general habit.

		Verbs		
		Action	State	Process
Negation	bù	X	X	
	méi(you)—negation of completion le	X		X
	hái méi—negation of combined le	X		X

Examples:

Action	Tā bú niàn shū. 他不念书。	He doesn't (isn't going to) study
	Tā méi niàn shū. 他没念书。	
	Tā hái méi niàn shū. 他还没念书。	He hasn't studied yet,
State	Tā qùnián bù xiǎng niàn shū. 他去年不念书。	Last year, she didn't want to study.
Process	Tā jīntiān méi bìng. 他今天没病。	He is not sick today.
	Tā hái méi hǎo. 他还没好。	He hasn't yet recovered.

⁶Most of the time you can figure out from a verb's meaning the semantic category in which that verb belongs. However, process verbs may not be so predictable.

他还没好。

Notice that only action verbs use the whole range of negatives to mark the negative of future or present action, completed action, or new situations. State verbs use the negative prefix **bù** even when referring to past states. Process verbs use the negative prefix **méi** even when referring to something in the present.

If you find a verb occurring with a negative or an aspect marker you had not expected, you might discuss with your teacher how the verb behaves in terms of these charts. You might discover that what you thought was a state verb is actually a process verb, or vice versa.

Notes on №9

9. A: **Jīntiān hǎo le méiyǒu?** 今天好了没有? Are you better today? (Are you recovered?)
 B: **Jīntiān hǎo le.** 今天好了。 Today I'm better.

Jīntiān hǎo le.: **Hǎo** is one of many state verbs which can become process verbs. When such a verb becomes a process verb, it takes on a different meaning. While the state verb **hǎo** means "to be good" or "to be well," the process verb **hǎo** means "to get better," "to recover." Compare these sentences:

Tā hǎo. 他好。	He's in good health.
Tā zuótiān bìng le. Tā jīntiān yǐjīng hǎo le. 他昨天病了。他今天已经好了。	Yesterday he became sick. Today he is already recovered.

The difference between the state verb **hǎo** and the process verb **hǎo** is even more evident in negative sentences. State verbs, as you remember, are made negative only with **bù**. Process verbs are made negative only with **méi** or **hái méi**.

Tā bù hǎo. 他不好。	He's not good. [He's not a good person.]
Tā hái méi hǎo. 他还没好。	He hasn't yet recovered. [He is still sick.]

It can be difficult to remember that **bìng** and **hǎo**, sometimes translated as "to be sick" and "to be better," are actually process verbs in Chinese, not state verbs.

The English sentence "I am better (recovered)" translates as **Wǒ hǎo le.** ("I have become well") and would be incorrect without the **le**.

Jīntiān hǎo le méiyǒu? Questions may be formed from statements containing completion **le** or combined **le** by adding **méiyǒu** at the end of the statements.

You will learn more about forming questions in the first unit of the next module.

Tā lái le méiyǒu? 他来了没有?	Did he come?
------------------------------------	--------------

Nǐ hǎole méiyǒu?

你好了没有？

Are you recovered (from your illness)?

Drills

Response drill

1. Tā jīntiān hái yǒu kè ma?

他/她今天还有课吗？

Does he have any more class today?

Tā méiyǒu kè le.

他/她没有课了。

He doesn't have any more classes.

2. Tā jīntiān hái lái ma?

他/她今天还来吗？

Is he/she still coming today?

Tā bù lái le.

他/她不来了。

He/she is not coming.

3. Tā xiànzài hái huì shuō Zhōngguó huà ma?

他/她现在还会说中国话吗？

Does he/she still speak Chinese now?

Tā bú huì shuō Zhōngguó huà le.

他/她不会说中国话了。

He/she can't speak Chinese anymore.

4. Tā xiànzài hái yǒu Zhōngguó shū ma?

他/她现在还有中国书吗？

Does he/she still have Chinese books now?

Tā méiyǒu Zhōngguó shū le.

他/她没有中国书了。

He/she has no more Chinese books anymore.

5. Tā hái niàn lìshǐ ma?

他/她还念历史吗？

Does he/she still study history?

Tā bú niàn lìshǐ le.

他/她不念历史了。

He/she doesn't study history anymore.

6. Tā xiànzài hái zài kōngjūn gōngzuò ma?

他/她现在还在空军工作吗？

Is he/she still working in the Air Force?

Tā bú zài kōngjūn gōngzuò.

他/她不在空军工作。

He/she does not work in the Air Force anymore.

7. Tā xiànzài hái xiǎng zǒu ma?

他/她现在还想走吗？

Does he/she still want to leave now?

Tā bù xiǎng zǒu le.

他/她不想走了。

He/she doesn't want to go anymore.

Expansion drill

1. Tā cóngqián niàn lìshǐ.

他/她从前念历史。

He/she formerly studied history.

Tā cóngqián niàn lìshǐ, xiànzài bú niàn le.

他/她从前念历史，现在不念了。

He/she formerly studied history, but now he/she doesn't anymore.

2. Tā cóngqián niàn shū.

他/她从前念书。

He/she used to study.

Tā cóngqián niàn shū, xiànzài bú niàn le.

他/她从前念书，现在不念了。

He/she used to study, now he/she doesn't anymore.

3. Tā cóngqián zài lùjūn zuò shì.

他/她从前在陆军做事。

He/she used to be in the Army.

Tā cóngqián zài lùjūn zuò shì, xiànzài bú zài lùjūn zuò shì le.

他/她从前在陆军做事，现在不在陆军做事了。

He/she used to be in the Army, but he/she doesn't anymore.

4. Tā cóngqián bú huì.

他/她从前不会。

He/she used to not.

Tā cóngqián bú huì, xiànzài huì le.

他/她从前不会，现在会了。

He/she used to not, but now he/she does.

5. Tā cóngqián bù zhīdào.

他/她从前不知道。

He/she never knew before.

Tā cóngqián bù zhīdào, xiànzài zhīdào le.

他/她从前不知道，现在知道了。

He/she never knew before, but he/she knows now.

6. Tāde Zhōngwén cóngqián bù hěn hǎo.

他/她中文从前不很好。

He/she wasn't very good at Chinese.

Tāde Zhōngwén cóngqián bù hěn hǎo, xiànzài hěn hǎo le.

他/她中文从前不很好，现在很好了。

He/she wasn't very good at Chinese, but he/she is now.

7. Tā cóngqián huì shuō Fàguó huà.

他/她从前会说法国话。

He/she used to speak French.

Tā cóngqián huì shuō Fàguó huà, xiànzài bú huì le.

他/她从前会说法国话，现在不会了。

He/she used to speak French, now he/she doesn't.

Transformation drill

1. Tā niànguo zhèngzhixué.

他/她念过政治学。

He/she has studied political science.

Cue

duó jiǔ

多久

how long

Tā niàn zhèngzhixué, niànle duó jiǔ?

他/她念政治学，念了多久？

How long did he/she study political science?

2. Tā niànguo jīngjixué.

他/她念过经济学。

He/she has studied economics.

Cue

jǐnián

几年

how many years

Tā niàn jīngjixué, niànle jǐnián?

他/她念经济学，念了几年？

How many years did he/she study economics?

3. Tā niànguo Zhōngguó wénxué.

他/她念过中国文学。

He/she has studied literature.

Cue

duó jiǔ

多久

how long

Tā niàn Zhōngguó wénxué, niànle duó jiǔ?

他/她念中国文学，念了多久？

How long did he/she study literature?

4. Tā xüéguo Rìwén.

他/她学过日文？

He/she has learned Japanese.

Cue

jǐge yuè

几个月

how many months

Tā xué Rìwén, xuéle jǐge yuè?

他/她学日文，学了几个月？

How many months did he/she learn Japanese?

5. Tā zài kōngjūn zuòguo shì.

他/她在空军做过事。

He/she has worked in the Air Force.

Cue

duó jiǔ

多久

how long

Tā zài kōngjūn zuò shì, zuòle duó jiǔ?

他/她在空军做事，做了多久？

How long did he/she work in the Air Force?

6. Tā niànguo Zhōngguo lìshǐ.

他/她念过中国历史。

He/she has studied Chinese history.

Cue

duó jiǔ

多久

how long

Tā niàn Zhōngguo lìshǐ, niànle duó jiǔ?

他/她念中国历史，念了多久？

How long did he/she study history?

7. Tā niànguo Yīngguo wénxué.

他/她念过英国文学。

He/she has studied English literature.

Cue

jǐnián

几年

how many years

Tā niàn Yīngguó wénxué, niànle jǐniàn?

他/她念英国文学，念了几年？

How many years did he/she study literature?

Transformation drill

1. Tā xiànzài niàn lìshǐ.
他/她现在念历史。
He/she is studying history now.

Cue duó jiǔ
多久
how long

Tā niàn lìshǐ, niànle duō jiǔ le?
他/她念历史，念了多久了？
How long has he been studying history?

2. Tā xiànzài xué Rìwén.
他/她现在学日文。
He/she is studying Japanese now.

Cue jǐge yuè
几个月
how many months

Tā xué Rìwén, xuéle jǐge yuè?
他/她学日文，学了几个月？
How many months has he been studying Japanese?

3. Tā xiànzài niàn Yīngwén.
他/她现在念英文。
He/she is studying English now.

Cue jǐge yuè
几个月
how many months

Tā niànle Yīngwén, niànle jǐge yuè le?
他/她念了英文，念了几个月了？
How many months has he been studying English?

4. Tā xiànzài zài hǎijūn zuò shì.

他/她现在在海军做事。

He/she is now working in the Navy.

Cue

jǐnián

几年

how many years

Tā zài hǎijūn zuò shì, zuòle jǐnián le?

他/她在海军做事，作了几年了？

How many years has he been working in the Navy?

5. Tā xiànzài xué Zhōngguó huà.

他/她现在学中国话。

He/she is learning Chinese now.

Cue

duó jiǔ

多久

how long

Tā xué Zhōngguó huà, xuéle duó jiǔ le?

他/她中国话，学了多久了？

How long has he/she been learning Chinese?

6. Tā xiànzài zài lùjūn zuò shì.

他/她现在在陆军做事。

He/she is working in the Army now.

Cue

jǐnián

几年

how many years

Tā zài lùjūn zuò shì, zuòle jǐnián le?

他/她在陆军做事，作了几年了？

How many years has he/she been working in the Army?

7. Tā xiànzài zài yínháng zuò shì.

他/她现在在银行做事。

He/she is working in a bank now.

Cue

jǐnián

几年

how many years

Tā zài yínháng zuò shì, zuòle jǐnián le?

他/她在银行做事，作了几年了？

How many years has he/she been working in the bank?

Transformation drill

1. Tā xiànzài hái niàn lìshǐ ne.

他/她现在还念历史呢。

He/she is still studying history.

Cue

duó jiǔ

多久

how long

Tā niàn lìshǐ, hái xiǎng niàn duó jiǔ?

他/她念历史，还想念多久？

How much longer is he/she going to study history?

2. Tā xiànzài hái niàn Zhōngguó wénxué ne.

他/她现在还念中国文学呢。

He/she is still studying Chinese literature.

Cue

duó jiǔ

多久

how long

Tā niàn Zhōngguó wénxué, hái xiǎng niàn duó jiǔ?

他/她念中国历史，还想念多久？

How much longer is he/she going to study Chinese literature?

3. Tā xiànzài hái xué Rìwén ne.

他/她现在还学日文呢。

He/she is still learning Japanese.

Cue

jǐge yuè

几个月

how many months

Tā xué Rìwén, hái xiǎng xué jǐge yuè?

他/她学日文，还想学几个月？

How much longer is he/she going to learn Japanese?

4. Tā xiànzài hái zài lùjūn zuò shì ne.

他/她现在还在陆军做事呢。

He/she is still working for the Army.

Cue

duó jiǔ

多久

how long

Tā zài lùjūn zuò shì, hái xiǎng zuò duó jiǔ?

他/她在陆军做事，还想做多久？

How long is he/she going to work in the army?

5.

Tā xiànzài hái xué Zhōngguó huà ne.

他/她现在还学中国话呢。

He/she is still learning Chinese.

Cue

duó jiǔ

多久

how long

Tā xué Zhōngguó huà, hái xiǎng xué duó jiǔ?

他/她学中国话，还想学多久？

How long is he/she going to learn Chinese?

6.

Tā xiànzài hái niàn zhèngzhixué ne.

他/她现在还念政治学呢。

He/she is still studying political science.

Cue

duó jiǔ

多久

how long

Tā niàn zhèngzhixué, hái xiǎng niàn duó jiǔ?

他/她念政治学，还想念多久？

How long is he/she going to study political science?

7.

Tā xiànzài hái niàn jīngjixué ne.

他/她现在还念经济学呢。

He/she is still studying economics.

Cue

duó jiǔ

多久

how long

Tā niàn jīngjìxué, hái xiǎng niàn duó jiǔ?

他/她念经济学，还想念多久？

How long is he/she going to study economics?

Transformation drill

1. Tā xiànzài niàn lìshǐ.

他/她现在念历史。

He is studying history now.

Tā niàn lìshǐ, niànle duó jiǔ le?

他/她念历史，念了多久了？

How long has he studied history?

2. Tā niànguo lìshǐ.

他/她念过历史。

He studied history.

Tā niàn lìshǐ, niànle duó jiǔ?

他/她念历史，念了对久？

How long did he study history?

3. Tā xiànzài hái niàn lìshǐ.

他/她现在还念历史。

He/she is still studying history.

Tā niàn lìshǐ, hái xiǎng niàn duó jiǔ?

他/她念历史，还想念多久？

How long does he/she plan to study history?

4. Tā xiànzài niàn Zhōngguó wénxué.

他/她现在念中国文学。

He/she is now studying Chinese literature.

Tā niàn Zhōngguó wénxué, niànle duó jiǔ le?

他/她念中国文学，念了多久了？

How long has he/she been studying Chinese literature?

5. Tā niànguo Zhōngguó wénxué.

他/她念过中国文学。

He/she has studied Chinese literature.

Tā niàn Zhōngguó wénxué, niànle duó jiǔ?

他/她念中国文学，念了多久？

How long did he/she study Chinese literature?

6. Tā xiànzài hái niàn Rìwén.

他/她现在还念日文。

He/she is still studying Japanese.

Tā niàn Rìwén# hái xiǎng niàn duó jiǔ?

他/她念日文，还想念多？

How long does he/she plan to study Japanese?

7. Tā niànguò Rìwén.

他/她念过日文。

He/she has studied Chinese.

Tā niàn Rìwén, niànle duó jiǔ?

他/她念日文，念了多久？

How long has he/she been studying Japanese?

8. Tā xuéguò Yīngwén.

他/她学过英文。

He/she has learned English.

Tā xué Yīngwén, xuéle duó jiǔ?

他/她学英文，学了多久？

How long has he/she been learning English?

9. Tā xiànzài hái xué Yīngwén.

他/她现在还学英文。

He/she is still learning English.

Tā xué Yīngwén, hái xiǎng xué duó jiǔ?

他/她学英文，还想学多久？

How long does he/she plan to learn English.

10. Tā xiànzài zài kōngjūn zuò shì.

他/她现在在空军做事。

He/she now works for the Air Force.

Tā zài kōngjūn zuò shì, zuòle duó jiǔ le?

他/她在空军做事，做了多久了？

how long has he/she been working for the Air Force?

Expansion drill

1. Wǒ xiě zì le.

我写字了。

I wrote.

Wǒ xiě zì le, tā méi xiě zì.

我写字了，他/她没写字。

I wrote, he/she didn't write.

2. Wǒ dǒng le.

我懂了。

I understood.

Wǒ dǒng le, tā méi dǒng.

我懂了，他/她没懂。

I understood, he/she didn't.

3. Wǒ lái le.

我来了。

I came.

Wǒ lái le, tā méi lái.

我来了，他/她没来。

I came, he/she didn't.

4. Wǒ zǒu le.

我走了。

I left.

Wǒ zǒu le, tā méi zǒu.

我走了，她没走。

I left, he/she didn't.

5. Wǒ zuò le.

我坐了。

I sat.

Wǒ zuò le, tā méi zuò.

我坐了，她没坐。

I sat, he/she didn't.

6. Wǒ tīng le.

我聽了。

I listened.

Wǒ tīng le, tā méi tīng.

我聽了，他/她沒聽。

I listened, he/she didn't.

7. Wǒ xué le.

我學了。

I learned.

Wǒ xué le, tā méi xué.

我學了，她沒學。

I learned, he/she didn't.

Response drill

1. Tā xiě le ma?

他/她写了吗？

Did he/she write?

Tā hái méi xiě.

他/她还没写。

He/she still hasn't written.

2. Tā lái le ma?

他/她来了吗？

Did he/she come?

Tā hái méi lái.

他/她还没来。

He/she still hasn't come.

3. Tā hǎo le ma?

他/她好了吗？

Did he/she get better?

Tā hái méi hǎo.

他/她还没好。

He/she still hasn't got better.

4. Tā dǒng le ma?

他/她懂了吗？

Did he/she understand?

Tā hái méi dǒng.

他/她还没懂。

He/she still hasn't understood.

5. Tā zǒu le ma?

他/她走了吗？

Did he/she leave?

Tā hái méi zǒu.

他/她还没走。

He/she still hasn't left?

6. Tā tīng le ma?

他/她听了吗？

Did he/she listen?

Tā hái méi tīng.

他/她还没听。

He/she still hasn't listened?

7. Tā xué le ma?

他/她学了吗？

Did he/she learn?

Tā hái méi xué.

他/她还没学。

He/she still hasn't learned.

Response drill

1. Tā cóngqián bú huì xiě Zhōngguó zì. Xiànzài ne?

他/她从前不会写中国字。现在呢？

In the past he/she couldn't write Chinese characters. And now?

Tā hái bú huì xiě Zhōngguó zì.

他/她还不会写中国字。

He/she still can't write Chinese characters.

2. Tā cóngqián bù xiǎng xué Rìwén. Xiànzài ne?

他/她从前不想学日文。现在呢？

In the past he/she didn't want to learn Japanese. And now?

Tā hái bù xiǎng xué Rìwén.

他/她还不学日文。

He/she still doesn't want to learn Japanese.

3. Tā cóngqián bú niàn lìshǐ. Xiànzài ne?

他/她从前不念历史。现在呢？

In the past he/she didn't learn history. And now?

Tā hái bú niàn lìshǐ.

他/她还不念历史。

He/she still doesn't learn history.

4. Tā cóngqián bù dǒng Fàwén. Xiànzài ne?

他/她从前不懂法文。现在呢？

In the past he/she didn't understand French. And now?

Tā hái bù dǒng Fàwén.

他/她还不懂法文。

He/she still doesn't understand French.

5. Tāmen cóngqián méiyǒu hái zi. Xiànzài ne?

他/她们从前没有孩子。现在呢？

In the past he/she didn't have children. And now?

Tāmen hái méiyǒu hái zi.

他/她们还没有孩子。

He/she still doesn't have any children.

6. Tā cóngqián bú huì shuō Déguó huà. Xiànzài ne?

他/她从前不会说德国话。现在呢？

In the past he/she couldn't speak German. And now?

Tā hái bú huì shuō Déguó huà.

他/她还不会说德国话。

He/she still doesn't speak German.

7. Tā cóngqián bù xiǎng xué Yīngwén. Xiànzài ne?

他/她从前不想学英文。现在呢？

In the past he/she didn't want to learn English. And now?

Tā hái bù xiǎng xué Yīngwén.

他/她还不学英文。

He/she still doesn't want to learn English.

Transformation drill

1. Tā cóngqián bú huì xiě Zhōngguó zì.

他/她从前不会写中国字。

In the past, he/she couldn't write Chinese characters.

Cue now he/she can

Tā cóngqián bú huì xiě, xiànzài huì xiě le.

他/她从前不会写，现在会写了。

In the past, he/she couldn't write, now he/she can.

2. Tā cóngqián huì xiě Zhōngguó zì.

他/她从前会写中国字。

In the past he/she could write Chinese characters

Cue no longer

Tā cóngqián huì xiě, xiànzài bú huì xiě le.

他/她从前会写，现在不会写了。

In the past he/she could write, now he/she can't.

3. Tā cóngqián bú huì xiě Zhōngguó zì.

他/她从前不会写中国字。

In the past he/she couldn't write Chinese characters.

Cue still can't

Tā cóngqián bú huì xiě, xiànzài hái bú huì xiě.

他/她从前不会写，现在还不会写。

In the past he/she couldn't write, now he/she still can't.

4. Tā cóngqián bù dǒng Fàwén.

他/她从前不懂法文。

In the past he/she didn't understand French.

Cue now he/she can

Tā cóngqián bù dǒng, xiànzài dǒng le.

他/她从前不懂，现在懂了。

In the past he/she didn't understand, now he/she can.

5. Tā cóngqián dǒng Fàwén.

他/她从前懂法文。

In the past he/she did understand French.

Cue no longer

Tā cóngqián dǒng, xiànzài bù dǒng le.

他/她从前懂，现在不懂了。

In the past he/she did understand, now he/she cannot anymore.

6. Tā cóngqián bù dǒng Fàwén.

他/她从前不懂法文。

In the past he/she didn't understand French.

Cue still can't

Tā cóngqián bù dǒng, xiànzài hái bù dǒng.

他/她从前不懂，现在还不懂。

In the past he/she didn't understand, now he/she still can't.

7. Tā cóngqián bù xiǎng xué Yīngwén.

他/她从前不想学英文。

In the past he/she didn't want to learn English.

Cue now he/she does

Tā cóngqián bù xiǎng xué, xiànzài xiǎng xué le.

他/她从前不想学，现在想学了。

In the past he/she didn't want to learn, now he/she wants to.

8. Tā cóngqián xiǎng xué Yīngwén.

他/她从前想学英文。

In the past he/she did want to learn English.

Cue no longer

Tā cóngqián xiǎng xué, xiànzài bù xiǎng xué le.

他/她从前想学，现在不想学了。

In the past he/she did want to learn, now he/she doesn't want to anymore.'

9. Tā cóngqián bù xiǎng xué Yīngwén.

他/她从前不想学英文。

In the past he/she didn't want to learn English.

Cue still doesn't

Tā cóngqián bù xiǎng xué, xiànzài hái bù xiǎng xué.

他/她从前不想学，现在还不学？。

In the past he/she didn't want to learn, now he/she still doesn't want to.

10. Tā cóngqián bú niàn lìshǐ.

他/她从前不念历史。

In the past he/she didn't study history.

Cue now he/she does

Tā cóngqián bú niàn, xiànzài niàn le.

他/她从前不念，现在念了。

In the past he/she didn't study, now she does study.

11. Tā cóngqián niàn lìshǐ.

他/她从前念历史。

In the past he/she did study history.

Cue no longer

Tā cóngqián niàn, xiànzài bú niàn le.

他/她从前念，现在不念了。

In the past he/she did study, now he/she doesn't anymore.

12. Tā cóngqián bú niàn lìshǐ.

他/她从前不念历史。

In the past he/she didn't study history.

Cue still doesn't

Tā cóngqián bú niàn, xiànzài hái bú niàn.

他/她从前不念，现在还不念。

In the past he/she didn't study, now he/she still doesn't.

